The Forest and Wildlife Research Center at Mississippi State University was established by the Mississippi Legislature with the passage of the Renewable Natural Resources Research Act of 1994. The mission of the Center is to conduct research and technical assistance programs relevant to the efficient management and utilization of the forest, wildlife, and fisheries of the state and region, and the protection and enhancement of the natural environment associated with these resources. FWRC scientists conduct this research in laboratories and forests administered by the University and cooperating agencies and industries throughout the country. Research results are made available to potential users through the University’s educational program and through Center publications such as this, which are directed as appropriate to forest landowners and managers, manufacturers and users of forest products, leaders of government and industry, the scientific community and the general public. Dr. Bob L. Karr is interim director of the Forest and Wildlife Research Center.

Authors

Amanda L. Husak is an extension associate in the Department of Forestry. Stephen C. Grado is a professor in the Department of Forestry. His primary research interests are multiple-use forest management, urban forestry, recreation and tourism.

Acknowledgements

This manual was developed by the Mississippi State University Forest and Wildlife Research Center, in cooperation with the Mississippi Forestry Commission, and the Mississippi Department of Environmental Quality. Funding for this project was provided by the Mississippi Forestry Commission.

Special thanks are extended to Mr. J. Wesley Jones, and Dr. Emily B. Schultz for comments on earlier versions of the manual, to Ms. Donna Yowell of the Mississippi Urban Forest Council for invaluable information, and to Ms. Karen Brasher for cover and CD-ROM design, and her multimedia expertise.

Thanks are extended to Mr. Walter Passmore of the Mississippi Forestry Commission and Mr. James MacLellan, P.E. of the Mississippi Department of Environmental Quality for their patience, insights, and contributions throughout the duration of the project.

To Order Copies

Copies of this and other Forest and Wildlife Research Center publications are available from:

Publications Office
Forest and Wildlife Research Center
Box 9680
Mississippi State, MS 39762-9680

Please indicate author(s), title, and publication number if known.

Publications can also be found at our web site at www.cfr.msstate.edu

Citation

Mississippi Urban and Community Forestry Management Manual

by

Amanda L. Husak
Stephen C. Grado
Introduction

Objective of the Manual
The objective of the Mississippi Urban and Community Forestry Management Manual is to address issues faced by, and provide management guidance to, community leaders in relation to the urban and community forest. The goal is to provide an effective tool for civic and community leaders, municipal officials, and concerned citizens to employ sound management guidelines to address their urban and community forestry needs.

Organization of the Manual
The Mississippi Urban and Community Forestry Management Manual is organized by chapters. Concentration areas for these chapters include, but are not limited to, costs and benefits; management strategies and ordinance development; wooded area conservation; stream protection; stormwater pollution prevention; water quality protection; trees on construction sites; and trees for streets, medians, parking lots, and shopping centers.

Justification for the Manual
The role of trees is taking on an increasing importance due to the intermixing of urban and wildland areas. Forested riparian zones and forested wetlands are often found in these interface areas and play vital roles in watershed function and health. Trees and forests should therefore be maintained and managed at levels adequate to provide the desired benefits to the community, satisfy applicable environmental regulations (such as stormwater regulations and non-point source regulations), and mitigate impacts. Some impacts that can be specifically mitigated include water temperature, peak flows, percolation, urban heat islands, sedimentation, pollutant transport in runoff, and nutrient loading. In fact, the addition of a single tree in an urban and community environment can increase the amount of rainfall interception by 7 to 22% and reduce sediment movement by 95%. Increase those percentages by acres of trees, and the rationale for establishing and maintaining urban and community forests is made readily apparent.

Users of this Manual
Ultimately, this manual will assist civic and community leaders, municipal officials, and concerned citizens in selecting solutions to address their urban and community forestry needs.
How to Use This Manual

The following provides a guide to the various chapters of the Manual.

Chapter 1 – Costs and Benefits of Using Trees in Urban and Community Environments.
This chapter provides an overview of the numerous costs and benefits involved with urban and community forest management. In addition, real-life examples of benefits recognized by Mississippi communities as well as a real-life benefit/cost analysis for the community of Hattiesburg, Mississippi is included.

Chapter 2 – Guidelines for Effective Urban and Community Forestry Management.
This chapter provides guidelines for managing urban and community forests. Details and guidelines for community resource inventories development, natural resource based planning, community forestry management strategies, and urban and community forestry ordinances are provided.

Chapter 3 – Guidelines for Conserving Wooded Areas.
This chapter provides guidelines for conserving wooded areas at the landscape, subdivision, and lot levels.

Chapter 4 – Guidelines for Protecting Urban and Community Streams.
This chapter discusses methods for protecting urban and community streams. Topics include watershed-based zoning, sensitive area protection, buffer network establishment, and stream buffer performance criteria and ordinances.

Chapter 5 – Guidelines for Land Developers and Contractors.
This chapter provides guidelines for reducing disturbance, preserving vegetation, protecting sensitive areas, and controlling erosion on construction sites. Site factors, growing space, environmental considerations, maintenance, best management practices, and recommended tree species for streets, parking lots, and shopping centers are also discussed.

Chapter 6 – Guidelines for Controlling Stormwater with Urban and Community Trees.
This chapter provides guidelines and methods for controlling urban stormwater with urban and community trees. While man-made, structural methods of stormwater control are mentioned, stress is placed upon using native trees and vegetation whenever possible.
# Contents

Introduction ................................................................................................................................. i

How to use this manual .................................................................................................................. ii

## Costs and Benefits of Using Trees in Urban and Community Environments

- **Chapter 1**
  - Benefits of Urban and Community Trees ............................................................................. 1
    - Improved Air Quality ........................................................................................................... 1
    - Reduced Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide ............................................................................... 2
    - Increased Energy Conservation ......................................................................................... 3
    - Reduced Stormwater Runoff ............................................................................................. 3
    - Improved Water Quality ..................................................................................................... 5
    - Reduced Soil Erosion ......................................................................................................... 6
    - Wildlife Food and Habitat ................................................................................................. 6
    - Increased Aesthetic Appeal ............................................................................................... 6
  - Real-Life Examples of Benefits to Mississippi Communities .................................................. 8
  - Costs of Urban and Community Trees .................................................................................. 9
    - Planning and Design Costs .............................................................................................. 10
    - Tree Hazards .................................................................................................................... 10
    - Infrastructure Conflicts ................................................................................................... 10

## Guidelines for Effective Urban and Community Forest Management

- **Chapter 2**
  - Conducting a Community Resource Inventory .................................................................... 13
  - Natural Resource-Based Planning ....................................................................................... 14
  - Developing a Community Forest Management Strategy ....................................................... 15
    - Question 1. What do you have? ...................................................................................... 16
      - Step A. Assess the tree resource .................................................................................. 16
      - Step B. Review tree management practices .................................................................... 16
    - Question 2. What do you want (i.e., goal-setting)? ........................................................ 17
      - Step C. Identify Needs ................................................................................................. 17
      - Step D. Establish Goals .............................................................................................. 18
    - Question 3. How do you get what you want? ................................................................ 18
      - Step E. Select tools and formulate the management strategy ..................................... 18
      - Step F. Implement the management strategy .................................................................. 19
      - Step G. Evaluate and revise ......................................................................................... 20
  - Hattiesburg’s Community Forestry Management Strategy .................................................. 20
    - Question 1. What do you have? ...................................................................................... 20
      - Step A. Assess the tree resource .................................................................................. 20
      - Step B. Review tree management practices .................................................................... 20
Chapter 5
Guidelines for Construction Sites

- Disturbance
- Vegetative Preservation
- Sensitive Areas
- Erosion Controls
- Vegetative Filter Strips
- Mulching
- Inspection and Maintenance

Guidelines for Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers

- Site Factors for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers
- Growing Space for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers
- Environmental Considerations for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers
- Maintenance of Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers
- Recommended Tree Species for Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers
- Best Management Practices for Tree Selection and Placement on Streets, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers

Chapter 6
Urban and Community Stormwater Pollution

- Stormwater Management Strategies
- Reduction of Impervious Cover
- Limitations on Erosion During Development
- Maintenance of Stream Protection Measures
- Treatment of Stormwater Runoff
- Goals and Recommended Actions for Urban and Community Stormwater Programs
- Specific Strategies for Stormwater Runoff Management
- Addressing Stormwater Runoff in New Development and Redevelopment
  - Area-Wide Measures
  - Site Design Measures
  - Site-Specific/Structural Runoff Control and Treatment BMPs
    - Detention Practices
    - Biofiltration and Bioretention Practices
    - Infiltration Practices
    - Natural Drainage Systems
    - Natural Drainage System Alternatives
    - Tree Retention
    - Tree Pit Enhancement
    - Infiltration/Conveyance Trench
    - Linear Bioretention System
    - Subsurface Linear Bioretention System
Chapter 1: Costs and Benefits of Using Trees in Urban and Community Environments

Trees are a valuable asset and an integral part of a community’s infrastructure. By performing essential biological functions, trees provide many substantial, measurable benefits for the community and environment. In contrast to other assets, trees have basic biological requirements for survival and growth, and, as a consequence, active tree management and protection is required to maintain tree health, function, safety, beauty, and value.

Since the costs and benefits of urban and community forests are quite extensive, it is up to each community to determine if urban and community forest-related projects achieve benefits that supersede the costs. If the benefits gained from urban and community trees are to be maximized, and the associated costs and risks are to be minimized, the community must have a good understanding of the benefits, costs, structure, and growth requirements of the trees themselves. Examples of variables that need to be considered include radiation loading, wind factors, stormwater runoff, property values, pavement degradation, tree removal and replacement costs, aesthetics, and noise issues.

Benefits of Urban and Community Trees

Trees provide a number of environmental, social, and economic benefits that may include, but are not limited to, air quality improvement, annual carbon dioxide reduction, increased annual net energy savings, stormwater runoff reduction (e.g., reduced flooding), flood water storage, erosion prevention, increased property values, noise reduction, aesthetics, and wildlife benefits. Quite often, these benefits are tangible and measurable in terms of dollar value. Some of the more important benefits are included below:

Improved Air Quality

Urban trees help to improve air quality in four main ways:
- oxygen release through photosynthesis,
- gaseous pollutant absorption (e.g., ozone, nitrogen oxide, sulfur dioxide) through leaf surfaces,
- particulate matter interception (e.g., dust, ash, pollen, smoke), and
- water transpiration and surface shading, which lowers local air temperatures and reduces ozone levels.

During photosynthesis, tree leaves absorb carbon dioxide and produce the oxygen we require to breathe. In fact, a single large, healthy tree can produce enough oxygen daily for 18 people.

Additionally, tree leaves absorb other
pollutants like carbon monoxide, nitrogen dioxide, sulfur dioxide, and particulate matter from the air. In fact, tree canopy cover of as little as 24% has been shown to remove up to 89,000 tons of pollutants annually, with a value of $419 million. Other studies suggest that deciduous and evergreen trees remove up to 9% and 13% of particulates in the air, respectively, and the estimated annual value of pollutant uptake by a typical medium-sized tree is between $12 and $20. Figure 1-1 illustrates how tree leaves absorb pollutants and intercept rainfall.

Trees also provide direct shading to buildings, parking lots, and road surfaces. Shading not only reduces temperatures but also indirectly reduces ozone and volatile organic compounds (VOCs) released from automobiles and biogenic volatile organic compounds (BVOCs) released from certain tree species.

**Reduced Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide**

Urban forests can reduce carbon dioxide in two ways:

- $\approx$ direct CO$_2$ sequestration in woody and foliar biomass during growth, and
- $\approx$ reduced demand for heating and air conditioning, resulting in reduced emissions from electric power production.

On average, a mature tree can absorb and store 13 pounds of carbon per year in its roots, trunk, and limbs, and an urban or community forest can sequester or store as much as 2.6 tons of carbon per acre per year. The collective storage capacity of urban and community trees across the United States is 6.5 million tons per year, resulting in a savings of $22 billion in control costs. For each pound of carbon removed, $1.70 is saved, which equates to an annual savings of $22 from carbon storage by each tree.

For each pound of wood grown, a tree absorbs 1.47 pounds of carbon dioxide and emits 1.07 pounds of oxygen. It is therefore possible that an acre of trees might grow 4,000 pounds of wood in a year, absorbing 5,880 pounds of carbon dioxide and emitting 4,280 pounds of oxygen. Alternatively, for every pound of decayed or burned wood, 1.07 pounds of oxygen are absorbed, and 1.47 pounds of carbon dioxide are emitted.

Figure 1-1. Illustration of a tree’s hydrologic cycle. Source: Cappiella et al., 2005.
Increased Energy Conservation

Urban trees conserve energy in three principal ways:

- **shading** — reduces amount of radiant energy absorbed by building surfaces,
- **transpiration** — converts moisture to water vapor and cools using solar energy that would otherwise result in air heating, and
- **wind speed reduction** — reduces infiltration of outside air into interior spaces and heat loss where thermal conductivity is high.

Tree crowns create a shade canopy for homes, offices, streets, parking lots, and pavement. This canopy reduces the amount of sunlight reaching our streets, lawns, and parking areas, and results in lower summer temperatures. In fact, air temperatures in trees and greenspace within individual building sites may be as much as 5°F lower than outside the greenspace. Trees properly placed for optimal shading of buildings (south and west sides) and air conditioners, can provide a 17 to 75% decrease in summer cooling costs. While the presence of a thick evergreen canopy can increase winter heating costs in some areas by reducing sunlight infiltration, properly placed trees in Mississippi generally decrease winter heating costs and serve to buffer a home against cold winter winds (north and west sides).

In a single growing season, the 200,000 leaves typically contained on a healthy 100-foot tree can uptake 11,000 gallons of water from the soil and transpire that water into the air. The cooling effect of transpiration is equivalent to air conditioning for 12 rooms.

Windbreaks composed of urban and community trees reduce wind speed and air infiltration by up to 50%, which potentially leads to annual heating savings of 25% or more. Additionally, heat transfer through conductive materials is decreased as a result of reduced wind speed.

Reduced Stormwater Runoff

Urbanization and land development alters and reduces natural vegetation, reduces natural infiltration properties of the watershed, significantly increases runoff amounts, and decreases water quality. Development-affected waterways experience a change in form and function that results in degraded systems no longer capable of providing good drainage, healthy habitat, or natural pollutant processing. In fact, conversion of forest to impervious cover can result in an estimated 29% increase in runoff during a peak storm event and ultimately result in lost habitat, unstable streams, degraded water quality, and reduced biological diversity.

Figure 1-2 illustrates how impervious surfaces alter hydrology, effectively creating a barrier to rainfall percolation into the soil, increasing surface runoff, and decreasing groundwater infiltration. As the percentage of impervious cover increases, there is a corresponding increase in runoff and decrease in evapotranspiration and infiltration, which leads to water pollution, habitat degradation, property damage, and the need for artificial stormwater control devices.

Healthy urban forests can help to counteract urbanization effects by reducing the amount of stormwater runoff and pollutant loading in
Figure 1-2. Water cycle changes associated with urbanization. Source: USEPA 1993.
three primary ways:
≈ leaves and branch surfaces intercept and store rainfall, reducing runoff volumes and delaying onset of peak flows,
≈ root growth and decomposition increase the capacity and rate of soil infiltration by rainfall and reduce overland flow, and
≈ canopies reduce soil erosion by diminishing the impact of raindrops on barren surfaces.

Urban trees are structurally important to communities because their many leaves, branches, stems, and roots aid in rainfall interception, storage, and release to the soil. When trees are present, water flow is spread over a greater amount of time, and the impact on stormwater facilities is smaller. By incorporating trees into a city’s infrastructure, cities can afford to build smaller, less expensive stormwater management systems. Because trees intercept 7 to 22% of precipitation, the value of trees can be measured by the reduction in construction and material costs for stormwater control structures and systems. One study has shown that, for every gallon of water intercepted by a tree during a twelve-hour storm, 2 cents in water control costs are saved. This equates to a 17% reduction of 11.3 million gallons, and a savings of $226,000 for a medium-sized city! In an Ohio study, an existing tree canopy with just 22% coverage reduced potential runoff by 7%, and an increase in canopy coverage to 29% reduced runoff by nearly 12%. By reducing runoff, trees function as natural retention-detention structures because increased interception and subsequent water storage greatly reduces the chances of flood damage to property and crops, and eliminates the need for costly stormwater treatment and control structures.

Furthermore, the amount and velocity of overland flow and non-point source (NPS) pollution that occurs during and after heavy rains is greatly decreased when trees are present. Simulations of urban forest effects on stormwater report annual runoff reductions of 2 to 7%. Reductions in flow amounts and velocities equate to less erosion and better infiltration and storage, ultimately leading to less damage to the watershed and the surrounding environment. Because of its water storage abilities, retaining, maintaining, and restoring forest land, particularly in riparian and bottomland areas, should be a priority for Mississippi communities. Allowing these areas to undergo development can create a need for expensive drainage projects to alleviate flooding. Simple planning, a little foresight, and help from nature can save communities both time and money in the long-run.

Improved Water Quality

Trees in urban riparian or streamside forests control fluctuations in water temperatures and act as natural filters by absorbing pollutants and other toxins before they can enter underground water systems. This, in effect, reduces the amount of polluted water that runs off urban and community streets, into sewers, and eventually into the groundwater, and also prevents thermal pollution
CHAPTER 1
Costs and Benefits of Using Trees in Urban and Community Environments

of water resources. Additionally, trees in urban
riparian forests maintain light levels that sustain ben-
eficial algae as well as other stream flora and fauna.

Urban and community forests can also help
improve water quality through treatment and dis-
posal of wastewater on irrigated nurseries or plan-
tations. Wastewater reuse can help to recharge
aquifers, reduce stormwater treatment loads, and
create income when used for nurseries or wood
products. Furthermore, urban wastewater recycled
through greenspaces provides an economical means
of treatment and disposal and provides other envi-
ronmental benefits.

Reduced Soil Erosion
Streams lacking urban riparian or streamside
forest channels are prone to channel widening
and bank erosion, and any fundamental change in
the dimension, pattern, and profile of a channel
results in habitat loss. Numerous studies attest
to the ability of urban riparian forests to remove,
hold, or transform nutrients from fertilizers, sedi-
ments, and other pollutants. In fact, urban and
community trees can reduce sediment movement
off a site by 95% even before water reaches the
riparian forest, effectively keeping our water bodies
cleaner and healthier. The amount of soil saved
in a medium-sized city annually can be as much as
10,886 tons!

Wildlife Food and Habitat
Although less biologically diverse than rural
woodlands, urban and community forests are home
to many wildlife species and provide much-needed
food and shelter in the urban environment. Flow-
ers, fruits, leaves, buds, and woody parts of urban
and community trees are used by many birds,
mammals, insects, and other wildlife species. Bac-
teria and fungi contained in tree parts cause decay
and increase soil fertility and structure. Elsewhere,
along streams, urban and community trees provide
shade, reduce water temperatures, contribute to
the overall health of aquatic ecosystems by provid-
ing habitat, shelter, and food for aquatic organisms
like turtles, otters, beavers, and fish, and often
connect a city or community to its surrounding
bioregion.

Increased Aesthetic Appeal
Trees placed in urban and community areas
create an aesthetically pleasing and comfortable
place in which to live, work, and shop. In fact,
beautification is one of the most frequently cited
reasons for planting trees, and research has shown
that street trees are the single strongest positive
influence on scenic quality. Trees also attract more
residents and visitors to a community, increasing the community’s tax and economic base. Surveys of consumers found that the presence of trees in commercial areas increases preference ratings, results in more frequent and extended shopping, and evokes higher willingness to pay for goods and services.

Adding or retaining trees in recreational areas creates a natural setting for activities such as walking, jogging, bicycling, golfing, and bird watching. Studies have found that urban and community park visitors preferred wooded to non-wooded parks. Residents of public housing complexes used outdoor spaces with trees significantly more often than spaces without trees. It has been further suggested that urban and community trees can strengthen social interactions, thereby reducing domestic violence, fostering safer and more sociable neighborhoods, and creating a sense of pride among residents. Others have established a connection between the presence of urban trees and crime reduction.

The presence of trees in cities and communities provides social and psychological benefits by answering the human need for contact with nature, and creating a general sense of human well-being through interaction with greenspace. Studies have shown that trees and views of nature provide pleasure and restorative experiences, ease mental fatigue and aid in concentration, result in reduced sickness and greater job satisfaction, reduce stress response, induce better sleep and reduced medication in hospital patients, and reduce exposure to ultraviolet light.

Urban and community trees can also result in increased property values. Trees can provide an owner of a single home with a 4 to 27% increase in property value, and a single tree can add as much as 9% to the total value of a residential property. Scientists have found that each large front-yard tree increased actual sale prices by 1% each. One study has shown that each hardwood tree on a site adds $333 to the property value and each pine adds $257.

Trees soften the glare and hard lines of developed city streets, screen buildings, reduce noise pollution, act as sound barriers or screens, and create natural noise amid city sounds. In cities, noise levels can reach unhealthy levels, with trucks, trains, and airplanes sometimes exceeding 100 decibels, which is two times the level at which noise becomes unhealthy. Thick vegetation strips,
in conjunction with solid barriers and landforms, can reduce highway noise by 6 to 15 decibels and absorb high frequencies that are most distressing to humans.

Forests, wetlands, meadows, and other natural areas provide essential ecological services such as providing floodwater storage, filtering runoff, moderating outside temperatures, storing carbon emissions, controlling erosion, providing visual and auditory screening, and providing natural aesthetics. When these areas are degraded or destroyed, communities are then forced to spend large sums of money to construct technologies that mimic natural functions.

Real-Life Examples of Benefits to Mississippi Communities

Many Mississippi cities and communities are presently involved in programs that directly or indirectly influence and result in the numerous urban and community benefits previously discussed. These programs are administered by diverse sources (i.e., local and state governments and agencies, public and private organizations), but most have, as their mission, providing communities with information and services to help them accomplish community improvement goals.

One very successful example of such a program is the Mississippi Main Street Association (MMSA), a private, non-profit organization contracted with the Mississippi Development Authority in 1989 to administer the Main Street Program. MMSA provides technical assistance and directs the revitalization efforts of downtowns and surrounding neighborhoods throughout Mississippi.

Since its inception, MMSA has, through strong partnerships and well-coordinated efforts, successfully assisted with the creation of over 1,000 new businesses and thousands of new jobs in numerous communities throughout the state. For example, in Columbus, MS, since 1985, 143 new businesses have been created; 8 businesses have expanded; 47 buildings have been improved; and 669 new jobs have been created (Appendix A). MMSA accomplishments for 40 other Mississippi communities are provided in Appendix A.

In just 15 years, MMSA has helped communities throughout our state instill new life into downtowns and business districts that were once forlorn and neglected, creating an in-flux of economic development and profit and instilling widespread community pride. In Mississippi, as well as many other U.S. states, downtowns are once again becoming the heart, center, and core of the
community.

As a direct result of MMSA revitalization efforts, participating Mississippi communities are reaping many benefits, not the least of which is “greener” downtowns. The addition of trees or “greening” of downtown settings creates an attractive retail and business setting and welcomes both shoppers and visitors. In fact, a 2003 study conducted in Athens, GA demonstrated that the presence of trees increases shopper and visitor amenity and comfort, creates a more positive interaction with merchants, advertises the high quality of products available in the district, and demonstrates proper maintenance and upkeep. Benefits from trees in downtown settings perceived by survey respondents in the study included:

- environmental benefits (e.g., downtown wildlife habitat, reduced heat radiation, improved air purification, increased precipitation shelter, and improved noise and auto pollution buffering);
- amenity values (e.g., improved aesthetic pleasure, increased shade, softened store fronts, added color to store-fronts); and
- downtown character (e.g., inviting and pleasant atmosphere, creation of pedestrian pockets, reduced starkness of landscape, area uniqueness and distinction).

Additionally, revitalizing downtown or central business districts through the use of urban trees can help to alleviate intense retail competition from discount retailers, regional malls, and online shopping. Revitalizing these areas creates places with distinct character and appeal that is not possible in discount or “mega” retail centers and far outweighs the seeming convenience of visiting those centers. In fact, surveyed consumers have expressed willingness to subject themselves to increased distance and time of travel, increased frequency and duration of visits, and increased prices paid for parking in retail places that have trees. These findings suggest that the time, money, and effort needed to create and steward a downtown urban forest is more than offset by the compensatory economic and aesthetic returns to the city and community as a whole.

**Costs of Urban and Community Trees**

In addition to providing many benefits and being a valuable community asset, urban and community trees have costs associated with their conservation, establishment, and maintenance. These costs usually revolve around tree purchase and planting, annual trimming, tree and stump removal and disposal, pest and disease control, irrigation, infrastructure damage, litter and storm clean-up,
litigation, and program administration. More specifically, neglected, unprotected, abused, or poorly maintained trees result in poor health, an increased risk for failure, and additional liability for the tree owner. A Tree Management Cost Worksheet is provided in Appendix B to assist in planning for costs associated with tree conservation and management. Additionally, a list of long-term cost saving strategies for tree conservation and management is included in Appendix B. While there are many costs associated with trees, in most cases benefits far outweigh costs. The ratio of benefits to costs can be much improved with the implementation of the guidelines in Chapter 2. Some of the direct and indirect costs involved with urban and community trees are described below.

Planning and Design Costs
Planning and designing an urban and community tree plan, evaluation, or survey project requires a great amount of time and money, but careful planning and quality design can result in a more successful and valuable project achieving high income levels. Some important elements of urban and community tree project planning and design include:

- quality planting stock — expensive, but purchasing good quality trees reduces future replacement and maintenance costs,
- tree maintenance — regular pruning insures tree health, safety, and longevity,
- tree monitoring and protection — reduces chances of damage from construction activities, utility line installation or repair, and pest problems, and
- tree removal — necessary when trees decline beyond the point of improvement or die, can be expensive for large trees.

Tree Hazards
Urban and community trees must not be allowed to grow into the clear zones designated for utility lines, pedestrian walkways, buildings, streets, and vehicle equipment travel lanes. Excess growth into these zones reduces clearance and sight distance and causes increased costs to maintain public safety. Additionally, portions of or whole trees that, either in the present or in the future, tower over property can cause utility service outages, vehicle, home, fence, or pavement damage, and lead to personal injury. For example, tree roots that surface above ground can be a tripping hazard for humans and can cause damage to lawn mower blades. Additionally, unpruned branches can cause severe personal injuries or even death.

Infrastructure Conflicts
In many cities across the U.S., communities are spending millions of dollars annually to manage and resolve conflicts between trees and sidewalks, sewers, power lines, and other elements of urban infrastructure. In previous studies, repair costs for sidewalk, curb and gutter repair, tree removal and replacement, prevention methods, and legal/liability costs range from $0.75 to $2.36 per capita and up to $6.98 per resident. When additional expenditures for damaged sewer lines, building foundations, parking lots, and other hardscape elements are
included, total costs can soar to $100 million per year in larger cities.

Unfortunately, in some areas, the high costs of infrastructure maintenance and dwindling fiscal budgets have forced municipalities to shift costs of sidewalk and other repairs to residents. This attempt to control costs has had an harmful effect on urban forests as a whole because cities have been forced to downsize urban forests by planting smaller stature trees, remove greater numbers of trees due to sidewalk damage, and remove more trees than are being planted. Most of these problems could easily be avoided by simply matching growth characteristics to conditions at the planting site.

Under favorable soil moisture conditions, tree roots will penetrate underground water and sewer lines through small cracks or pipe joints, proliferate, and cause problems. Repair costs for damaged water and sewer lines are expensive, typically ranging from $100 to $1,000 per pipe.

Throughout the year, urban and community trees drop leaves, flowers, fruit, and branches that collect as debris on city streets and can clog sewers, dry wells, and other elements of flood and stormwater control systems. Large expenditures from additional labor needed to remove debris, property damage from localized flooding, and clean-up costs after windstorms can be avoided by employing street sweepers on a regular basis.

Conflicts between trees and power lines often result in increased electric rates and decreased benefits from over-pruning of poorly-suited trees. In areas with thousands of trees, pruning costs can be as high as $50 per tree, and this cost is, more often than not, passed on to the consumer. Most of the above problems can be minimized or avoided by simply matching tree species to planting sites.

**Benefit/Cost Analysis for Urban and Community Trees in Hattiesburg, MS**

The city of Hattiesburg, Mississippi recently served as the basis for the model used to develop an affordable approach to assess street tree populations in small communities. This approach provided four types of information:

- tree structure (species composition, diversity, age distribution, condition),
- tree care needs (sustainability, canopy cover, pruning, young tree care),
- tree function (magnitude of environmental and aesthetic benefits), and
- tree value (dollar value of net benefits realized).

Results of the project provided Hattiesburg and other small- to medium-sized southern communities a baseline for assessing their street trees and developing cost-effective tree planting and care programs. Project results also provided Hattiesburg with a benefit/cost ratio (BCR), which will help city managers justify costs associated with their urban forestry activities and programs.

Total annual benefits from Hattiesburg’s street trees were calculated from dollar values for net energy savings (i.e., annual natural gas savings + annual electricity savings); net air
quality improvement (i.e., PM$_{10}$ interception + NO$_2$ absorption + O$_2$ absorption); carbon dioxide reductions (i.e., CO$_2$ sequestered less releases + CO$_2$ avoided from reduced energy use); stormwater runoff reductions (i.e., effective H$_2$O interception); and aesthetics (i.e., increased property values). Total annual costs for Hattiesburg’s street trees were calculated from dollar values for planting; pruning; tree and stump removal and disposal; pest and disease control; establishment/irrigation; repair/mitigation of infrastructure; litter/storm clean up; litigation and settlements related to tree-related claims; program administration; and inspection/answering service requests.

During the 2003-2004 fiscal years, publicly maintained street trees produced nearly $1.25 million in tangible benefits for the residents of Hattiesburg. This amounted to an average of $111.24 per publicly maintained tree or approximately $22.73 for every resident. Total annual benefits divided by total annual costs yielded a BCR of 4.1:1. Therefore, the city’s street trees returned $4.10 to the community for every $1 spent on their management!

Hattiesburg, Mississippi’s BCR (4.1:1) compared favorably to that of Davis, California’s (3.78:1). Forty percent of the annual benefits were attributed to environmental values. Of this total, energy savings and improved air quality—benefits that are locally realized—constituted the majority of this value. Though of lesser proportion functionally, reductions in CO$_2$ and stormwater runoff were also significant.

While species varied in their ability to produce benefits, common characteristics of trees within tree type classes aided in identifying the most beneficial street trees. Comparatively, large trees produced the most benefits. However, the average large deciduous tree produced nearly 30% more than a large conifer and almost 50% more than a large broadleaf evergreen. Comparisons within tree types were more striking. Even the most immature of the large-stature deciduous trees produced more annual benefits than mature, small-stature trees of the same type. Medium deciduous trees out-performed large broadleaf evergreens and rival the benefits produced by the average large conifer.
Chapter 2: Guidelines for Effective Urban and Community Forest Management

Conducting a Community Resource Inventory

Every community possesses an array of resources and qualities that give it unique character and sense of pride. These resources are vital to the well-being and long-term success of the community and must be protected. Communities desiring to embark on a resource-based planning process, with an ultimate goal of sustainable development, are well-advised to conduct an inventory of the community’s resources.

One approach, called Community Resource Inventory (CRI) consists of three separate resource inventories: natural, social, and economic. These inventories, taken separately or as a whole, provide the information needed for a community to make informed and rational decisions about land use. Conducting a CRI requires a 6-step process:

1. **Assemble a small working group of knowledgeable citizens.** This group should acknowledge the responsibility of other civic boards and commissions for creation and maintenance of the inventories.

2. **Determine the study area of the inventory.** The inventory process is fundamentally the same, no matter the scale (e.g., site, town, watershed, or region.) The best scale for a community to use is that which best suits its needs.

3. **Review existing documents that were previously completed by the community.** These documents may include: conservation and development plans, resource inventories, and special studies or plans. Work of adjacent jurisdictions and/or the help of a regional planning agency may also be helpful.

4. **Assemble maps and information from local and state sources.** Maps are available from a variety of different sources. When assembling the maps, caution should be taken not to get overwhelmed by details. Remember to gather only that information which will help the community make better land use decisions.

5. **Write a draft report.** The report should include both a map and sources, along with a narrative that describes that map and how it may or may not be used. A list of maps and data sets used for the CRI is included in Appendix B.

6. **Publicize and solicit information to both the town’s boards and commissions and to citizens.** Use all available resources to publicize the importance
of this information to the community. Solicit input from citizens and incorporate constructive and improved information into the inventory.

Information from the CRI can be incorporated into nearly all planning decisions that affect the community, from open space to economic development. If the CRI information is to be effective, commissions assigned the responsibility for the inventory must keep it up-to-date. The inventory should be revisited to ensure that the most current information available is provided to the community’s decision makers.

**Natural Resource-Based Planning**

When community planning and decision-making revolve around natural resources, a thorough and correct natural resource inventory is essential. The inventory should first be conducted at the landscape-level by an interdisciplinary team comprised of individuals from natural resource professions, civic, federal, state, and local governments, concerned community organizations, and nonprofit organizations. The inventory should include a woodland survey and resource assessment, and should produce a Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map, containing all pertinent survey and assessment information (Figure 2-1).

Following the inventory, communities can begin developing an open space plan that is sensitive to the area’s unique sense of place and its natural resources. Open space can best be categorized by the functions that it achieves.

---

Figure 2-1. A resource map such as this example of the city of Cottage Grove, Minnesota shows the location of important features of the landscape including tree stands, water bodies, historical sites, and existing land use. Source: Minnesota DNR 2000.

Six functional types of open space include:

- natural resource protection areas, (e.g., animal and vegetative habitat, stream-belt corridors, and rock ridges);
- outdoor recreation;
  - active, (e.g., parks, playgrounds, beaches, and trails); and
  - passive, (e.g., plazas, sitting areas, arboretums);
- resource management, (e.g., forests, fisheries, and farmland);
- protection of public health and safety (e.g., floodplains, wetlands, unbuildable areas, or areas with limitations for development);
areas that shape community character or design (e.g., buffer strips, front, back, and side yards, urban plazas, greenways, open space dedications); and

historic or archeological sites (e.g., battlegrounds, historic structures and grounds, historic districts, town greens).

No matter what the intended function for open space, it is important that a community possess a unifying game plan to address new development with a directive, rather than reactive approach. The desires and needs of the community regarding any new development should be communicated clearly and frequently so that irreversible, harmful mistakes are not made.

After the open space plan has been developed, a more thorough plan of conservation and development can be created. This plan consists of designating areas of no new development, limited development, and suitable future development. Examples of areas not to be developed include existing developments, committed open spaces, and regulated wetland areas. These areas can be permanently protected through conservation easements. Areas with limited development include those with little net buildable area or those with large lots. These areas can be designed with conservation in mind, making shorter, narrower roads and creating new open space. Areas suitable for future development are those areas considered “growth areas” by communities (e.g., shopping centers, new subdivisions). Whenever possible, areas of limited or new development should be viewed in a regional perspective and possibly linked to form greenways. Additionally, any new developments or alterations to existing developments should incorporate native natural vegetation and trees.

Developing a Community Forest Management Strategy

Tree ordinances provide the legal framework for successful urban and community forest management by enabling and authorizing management activities. However, methods for managing urban forest ecosystems are continually evolving, and the input of trained professionals to the management process is critical. Therefore, ordinances should facilitate rather than prescribe management, and communities need to develop or review their overall urban forest management strategy before considering a new or revised urban and community forestry ordinance.

In developing or reviewing an overall management strategy, a community should ask itself four questions and follow seven corresponding steps (all information taken directly from ISA 2001). Working through the steps is ultimately driven by specific goals and resources of the individual community. By following the process outlined below, a small community with very modest forest management goals can develop a simple ordinance that addresses its limited goals. Conversely, communities seeking to develop a
comprehensive tree management program or expand their existing programs can do so following the same process. In either case, the ordinances developed will be uniquely suited to community needs.

Question 1. What do you have?

   Step A. Assess the tree resource.

An assessment of tree resources provides the basic information necessary for making management decisions and provides a baseline against which change can be measured. Ideally, this assessment should include all tree resources within the planning area of the municipality.

Tree resource assessments are based on various inventory methods, most of which require some type of survey. Complete tree inventories of all public trees are relatively common, and play a central role in many tree management programs. However, complete tree inventories can be very costly and may exceed the budget and needs of smaller communities. In these cases, an estimate of tree population density taken from a sample inventory may be more suitable. Appendix B outlines a sample tree inventory process.

Useful information obtained from the assessment includes:

≈ total number of trees classified by species, condition, age, size, and location,
≈ problem situations, such as sidewalk damage, disease and pest problems, or hazardous trees, preferably linked to the basic tree data above, and
≈ amount of canopy cover by location.

The complexity of inventories can vary depending on community size and nature of the data collected. City staff, consultants, or volunteers can be trained to make inventories, as long as steps are taken to make sure the data is valid and reliable. For example, in one city, a tree inventory was completed as an Eagle Scout project.

   Step B. Review tree management practices.

Understanding the status of the urban or community forest requires knowing how it has been previously managed. Some information that should be collected on past
and current management methods and actions includes:

≈ municipal tree care practices, including planting, maintenance, and removal,
≈ existing ordinances, and level of enforcement practiced (i.e., numbers of violations, permits and citations issued, penalties and fines collected),
≈ planning regulations and guidelines pertaining to trees, and numbers of tree-related permits granted, modified, or denied, and
≈ activities of municipal departments and public utilities that impact trees.

The purpose of reviewing past and current tree management practices is to identify all activities affecting trees in the community, especially those falling under municipal control. For instance, seemingly unrelated ordinances and planning regulations may directly or indirectly impact forest resources and, therefore, must be taken into account.

Question 2. What do you want (i.e., goal-setting)?

Step C. Identify Needs.

Once information on the status of tree resources and tree management is in hand, a community can assess its urban forestry needs. Urban and community forestry needs can be grouped into three broad categories, with some needs falling into more than one category.

Biological needs (i.e., related to the tree resource itself):

≈ increase species and age diversity to provide long-term forest stability,
≈ provide sufficient tree planting to keep pace with urban growth and offset tree removal,
≈ increase proportion of large-statured trees in the forest for greater canopy effects, and
≈ guarantee proper compatibility between trees and planting sites to reduce sidewalk damage and conflicts with overhead utilities that lead to premature tree removal.

Management needs (i.e., needs of those involved with the short- and long-term care and maintenance of the urban forest):

≈ develop adequate long-term planning to guarantee the sustainability of the urban forest,
≈ optimize the use of limited financial and personnel resources,
≈ increase training and education for tree program employees to ensure high quality tree care, and
≈ coordinate tree-related activities of municipal departments.

Community needs (i.e., those that relate to how the public perceives and interacts with the urban forest and the local urban forest management program):

≈ increase public awareness of values
and benefits associated with trees,
≈ promote better private tree care
through better public understanding of
the biological needs of trees,
≈ foster community support for the ur-
ban forest management program, and
≈ promote conservation of the urban
forest by focusing public attention on
all tree age classes, not just large heri-
tage trees.

Although the needs listed above are com-
mon in many communities, specific needs of
each community will vary, and may include
others not noted here.

Step D. Establish Goals.
With information on resources and needs
collected, goals to address local urban
forestry needs can be set and a manage-
ment strategy formed. To establish realistic
goals, it is important to consider limitations
posed by the level of community support,
economic realities, and environmental con-
straints. Limitations on resources may make
immediate addressing of all identified needs
impractical and, in this case, it will be ne-
necessary to prioritize goals.

Community involvement and support are
critical in the establishment of goals since
most urban and community forestry ordi-
nances rely heavily upon voluntary compli-
ance by the public, and compliance will
only occur if the public supports the goals
set. Involving the public in the goal-setting
process allows them to reflect on the values
of their community as well as educate them-
selves on how urban forest management
affects their community.

Since goals are tangible ends that the
management strategy seeks to achieve, it is
important to set goals which are quantifi-
able, so that progress toward achieving
these goals can be monitored. Typical tree
program goals, as well as corresponding or-
dinance provisions for each goal, consistent
with good urban forest management are
discussed in detail in Appendix B.

Question 3. How do you get what you
want?

Step E. Select tools and formulate the
management strategy.
This step develops a management strategy
addressing specific goals. It is important to
remember there are many approaches that
can be used to address each goal, and the
pros and cons of each approach should be
considered. Feasibility, practicality, legal-
ity, and economics should be considered
in selecting appropriate management tools.
Some typical tools include:
≈ public education programs,
≈ assistance and incentive programs,
≈ voluntary planting programs,
≈ mitigation guidelines,
≈ planning regulations and guidelines,
including the general plan and specific
plans, and
ordinances.

Community involvement and support continues to be important in this phase of the process; if management approaches and tools are unacceptable to the community, they are unlikely to succeed. Your assessment of current and past management practices should provide ideas about the effectiveness of various methods used in your community, and public input and comment should be sought for any new approaches being contemplated or developed.

The role of an ordinance becomes apparent at this stage, when it may become necessary to establish new positions, require development and implementation of a community forest master plan, mandate a program of public education, or outlaw destructive practices. Any provisions placed in ordinances should be directly related to the goals your community has established for its community forest, and all ordinances should include all of the essential components previously listed.

Step F. Implement the management strategy.

No matter how ideal a plan may appear on paper, it cannot achieve its goals until it is implemented. Implementation of the management strategy requires several steps, which may differ between communities, and include:

≈ passing an ordinance,
≈ budgeting necessary funds,
≈ hiring a municipal forester or arborist,
≈ appointing a citizen tree advisory board,
≈ formulating a master tree management plan, and
≈ developing public education programs.

The above steps need not require funding if a volunteer tree board can be formed and ordinances are in place. The city of Pass Christian, MS implemented their management strategy without funding and saved many trees.

It is often useful to map out an implementation schedule to accomplish the steps involved in your community’s management strategy. The schedule should show the steps involved and the time frame within which they should be completed. Additionally, progress checks in the form of required progress reports to the city council or county board of supervisors should be built into the schedule to make certain that
delays or problems are detected and addressed. Maintaining a high profile for the management program during implementation will help foster public interest and maintain the commitment of local government.

**Question 4. Are you getting what you want?**

**Step G. Evaluate and revise.**

Monitoring of your implemented management strategy is essential to make certain that progress is being made and standards are being met. Evaluation provides feedback on the effectiveness of the strategy, provides opportunities to reassess the needs and goals of the community, and allows readjustments and changes to goals before a crisis develops. Specific methods to monitor ordinance effectiveness are included in Appendix B.

**Hattiesburg’s Community Forest Management Strategy**

**Question 1. What do you have?**

**Step A. Assess the tree resource.**

In 2004, a sample tree inventory was undertaken to assess Hattiesburg’s tree resources. The aim of the sample inventory was to provide a reliable estimation of street tree species, diversity, population, and other variables (i.e., pruning needs, canopy cover, tree condition).

To facilitate the street tree inventory, the city wards of Hattiesburg were delineated and divided into regions of similar land-use, demographic character, and street layout. Zone segments were numbered, and the total linear street length found in each zone’s segments was measured and recorded. Random samples were then chosen within each zone to serve as sampling units. Within the sampling units, all trees falling within 1.5 ft. of street edge were inventoried according to established protocols. Data collected for each tree included species, land use, location, size, pruning requirements, condition, conflicts, and shading.

**Step B. Review tree management practices.**

Data collected during the sample inventory facilitated assessment of structural components and management practices (i.e., canopy coverage, conditions, distribution, pruning needs) as well as other conflicts associated with public safety for Hattiesburg’s street trees. This assessment was categorized by ward and zone type to show where management is needed most to improve street tree health and sustainability, and to show how investing in a management program has provided benefits through maintenance of street trees.
Question 2. What do you want (i.e., goal-setting)?

Step C. Identify Needs.
Calculations of overall canopy cover, condition of street trees, street tree distribution by land use, and pruning and maintenance needs aided the city in an assessment of overall management needs.

Canopy cover is the driving force behind an urban forest’s ability to produce benefits in the community. As canopy cover increases, so also do the benefits afforded by increased leaf area (e.g., greater rainfall interception, shade, cooling, CO₂ reduction, pollutant uptake, aesthetics). Residents pay the city to manage street trees for the benefit of the community, and to realize the maximum return on this investment, a city should strive to maintain present canopy cover in a way that promotes annual increases. Hattiesburg’s citywide canopy coverage was 31% over all zones sampled.

Determining suitability of street trees to a location is a method which can be assessed by a tree’s condition. Conditions of Hattiesburg’s street trees varied with each zone. Citywide street tree conditions averaged 62% good, 25% fair, and 13% dead or dying. Over all zones, good trees ranged from 41 to 83%. Fair trees ranged from 12 to 34%, while dead and dying trees ranged from 2 to 25%.

Street tree distribution by land-use followed the basic development of Hattiesburg, having the vast majority of the city’s land area in single home residential neighborhoods. Many of these trees are volunteers that were left or seeded naturally from the forest within which the city was developed.

Unfortunately, budget constraints of municipal tree programs often dictate the length of pruning cycles and maintenance regimes rather than the needs of the urban forest and its constituent components. In fact, many cities do not have a programmed pruning plan, but maintain trees under “request” and “crisis” mode, finding them further and further behind every year. Programmed pruning, under a reasonable time line, can improve public safety by eliminating conflicts, reducing costs by improving program efficiency, and increasing benefits by improving tree health and condition. Any short-term dollar savings realized by cities deferring pruning only do so at the expense of lost tree value. All zones in Hattiesburg showed that around 20% of the street tree population required pruning.

Step D. Establish Goals.
Hattiesburg outlined its wants and desires for its urban forest management program on June 4, 1991, when the City Council passed its first true tree ordinance creating
the city’s first tree board. This five member board provided oversight and guidance in establishing a community forestry program and influenced decision-makers to pass the second tree-related ordinance in 1993. This ordinance provided for a broader spectrum of professional expertise on the board (i.e., an arborist, a landscape architect, a horticulturist) and more community involvement by expanding the board to seven members. This board worked to obtain grants (i.e., America the Beautiful 1991, $10,000; Small Business Administration 1991, $22,500; Georgia Pacific Corporation 1992, $2,000; America the Beautiful 1992, $10,200; Small Business Administration 1993, $12,000) to plant trees and provide impetus for hiring the city’s first urban forester, Garland Gatlin, in 1995.

**Question 3. How do you get what you want?**

**Steps E and F. Select Tools, Formulate, and Implement the Management Strategy.** With respect to street trees, the city of Hattiesburg’s 2002-2005 plan of goals and objectives outlines what any city would be proud to achieve: “Main Goal – protect existing trees and increase tree cover in Hattiesburg.” City street trees and trees within public facilities are to be maintained in a healthy, vigorous condition to provide numerous benefits including shade, wind barriers, improved air quality, and visual relief.

The city’s comprehensive urban tree management plan selected tools such as ecologically and horticulturally sound pest and disease control; a high standard of pruning; proper planting and establishment methods; and a timely response to complaints and safety concerns to implement their management strategy. In other words, the city sought to maintain a functional municipal forest that is both healthy and safe, with street tree populations that yield numerous benefits without compromising environmental quality or the well-being of the citizens who live, work, and play there.

Ultimately, Hattiesburg “gets what it wants” by accomplishing their objectives of maintaining mature trees, tree planting, establishing a tree nursery, supplying trees to residents, maintaining young trees, and improving tree ordinances. These ordinances can apply to any city wanting to protect, maintain, and restore its trees, and are, in fact, a good set of objectives and goals for which to strive.

**Question 4. Are you getting what you want?**

**Step G. Evaluate and Revise.** Although street tree inventories can and do occur as a precursor to new community forest management plans, they can also be helpful in evaluating and revising management plans already in place. As discussed
above, Hattiesburg used this tool to evaluate their own management plan, and will, no doubt use it to make any necessary revisions for the future.

As part of the natural resource based plan or overall urban forest management strategy, municipal officials, committees, tree boards and commissions, and other affiliated parties must determine and carefully examine any codes, regulations, ordinances, or laws that may affect, however remotely, the plan or strategy. Any and all codes, regulations, ordinances, or laws must then be addressed, and the plan or strategy altered, prior to approving or initiating any activities.

Some examples of codes, regulations, ordinances, or laws that may be in place in Mississippi communities include:

≈ subdivision ordinances, (exercise power in subdivision design, including physical layout, street standards, utility service, and open space);
≈ zoning regulations, (control land use by dividing the land into different use districts and setting standards for development, including parcel use, lot size, density, street and property line setbacks, and structure size);
≈ building codes, (dictate to what standards structures must adhere, including fire resistance, capacity, size and height, and appearance);
≈ vegetation ordinances, (address undesirable plants, municipal trees, and arborist certification and licensing);
≈ tree protection ordinances, (protect existing trees and other vegetation during development and regulate tree removal by establishing definitions, procedures, penalties, and appeals necessary for enforcement);
≈ special tree, species, and ecosystem
regulations and laws, (often require specific guidelines for their maintenance and protection);
≈ landscape ordinances, (require submission and approval of landscape plans, tree location plans, or new tree planting for new developments or development rehabilitation);
≈ screening ordinances, (set standards for structural and/or vegetation screening on lot peripheries and vegetated islands within the lot); and
≈ energy conservation regulations, (reduce wind speed, mitigate urban heat islands, and reduce overall energy use and waste).

Although not all of the above codes, regulations, ordinances or laws will be in effect in, or applicable to, all communities or situations, many will apply and can affect plans or strategies. Communities should take steps to ensure that the review of all future development includes checking the plan against their Community Forest Management Strategy. Careful examination and attention to detail can help avoid potential conflicts of interest and ensure plan success.

Developing Urban and Community Forestry Ordinances
Need for Urban and Community Forestry Ordinances
To many residents, urban and community forests, no matter what their size, are an important and essential part of the community which provides character and beauty, and influences property values and the quality of life enjoyed by community residents.

One proven tool used by communities striving to attain a healthy, vigorous, and well-managed community forest and protect urban and community trees and woodlands is adoption of local laws through the development and establishment of urban and community forestry ordinances. In their most basic form, ordinances generally seek to provide developers with a framework for preserving and restoring as many trees as possible on a site, often placing an emphasis upon older, larger specimens. Urban and community forestry-related ordinances can also serve to protect and establish green space, delineate and protect buffer zones, maintain and protect urban and community trees, and
control non-point source pollution, or mitigate stormwater.

Planning For Urban and Community Forestry Ordinances

All communities have different needs and values regarding their urban and community forestry resources. To some communities, retention of the urban and community forest resource and the proper specifications and standards of urban and community forest restoration through tree planting is a critical need for which ordinances are established. Ordinances, in effect, generally reflect the individuality and values of a community and its residents, values they believe are worthy of protection and essential to maintain their quality of life and provide an environment that is both pleasant and safe. More specifically, urban and community forestry ordinances encourage neighborhood beautification, tree protection and preservation, regulation of development, and restoration of areas through planting and management. Additionally, ordinances serve the purpose of enabling citizens to prevent the spread of tree diseases and regulate sidewalk replacement and utility line clearing work. Finally, urban and community forestry ordinances can enhance the beauty and safety of a community’s urban forest because they often require the use of professionals, specify duties of municipal employees, and help control careless management of this important natural resource.

By themselves, urban and community forestry ordinances cannot assure the improvement or maintenance of urban and community trees. Tree ordinances simply provide authorization and standards for management activities which must be integrated into an overall management strategy. Simply put, tree ordinances can assist in the overall proper management of community tree resources.

Effectiveness of Urban and Community Forestry Ordinances

The effectiveness of urban and community forestry ordinances depends upon numerous factors including resident support, opposition, and awareness; adequacy of ordinance enforcement; provisions for environmental limitations that affect tree health, growth, and survival; and availability of financing from local governments to fulfill ordinance requirements.

Although the form, content, and complexity of ordinances may vary widely, an effective tree ordinance should meet the following criteria:

1. Goals should be clearly stated and ordinance provisions should address stated goals. Goals must be clearly stated because they provide the basis for interpreting ordinances and evaluating their effectiveness. Lack of clear, specific goals is a common shortcoming of many tree ordinances.

2. Responsibility should be designated, and authority granted, commensurate with responsibility. In most cases, the most efficient way to manage an urban forest is to have one individual responsible for overseeing all tree-related
activities. In smaller communities, it may be necessary to split responsibility between a tree commission, which sets policy and has administrative duties, and city staff, which is responsible for operations and enforcement.

3. Basic performance standards should be set. Effective performance standards address the urban forest as a whole rather than focusing exclusively on individual trees.

4. Flexibility should be designated into the ordinance. Flexible performance standards can allow responsible parties to make decisions on a case-by-case or site-specific basis.

5. Enforcement methods should be specified. Specifying enforcement methods like fines, jail terms, forfeiture of performance bonds, and tree replacement plantings and consistent enforcement of these methods can help deter offenders.

6. The ordinance should be developed as part of a comprehensive management strategy. A comprehensive management strategy assures the inclusion of appropriate and necessary provisions to protect urban and community forestry resources.

7. The ordinance should be developed with community support. Developing the ordinance within the context of community values and priorities can help gain public support. Many ordinances rely on voluntary compliance to guarantee public support.

8. Effective tree ordinances are connected to local land use planning and zoning. They are also part of the building permit process. Information on ordinance requirements and tree care techniques should be available at the planning office and wherever people apply for building permits.
Chapter 3: Guidelines for Conserving Wooded Areas

Conserving Wooded Areas
Best Management Practices (BMPs) to Conserve Wooded Areas at the Landscape Level

Conservation of wooded areas should be an essential part of any land development project. Conserving and incorporating trees into existing neighborhoods, new developments, and the watershed can lead to more livable communities that retain the integrity and benefits of natural resources and are ultimately more sustainable. Urban and community planners can more easily conserve wooded areas by adopting and following a step-by-step land-use approach that consists of defining goals, conducting an inventory and assessing resources, creating a conservation plan, and identifying and selecting land protection options.

Define Goals
Goals to conserve wooded areas across the landscape should include:

- protection and/or restoration of ecological integrity and functions,
- protection and promotion of connectivity and continuity of wooded areas across the landscape and political boundaries,
- establishment or creation of networks of forest communities as open space,
- definition of neighborhood and community boundaries,
- concealment of unsightly or incompatible land-use practices, and
- protection of wildlife habitat and corridors.

Inventory and Assessment of the Resource
A landscape-level resource inventory that includes a woodland survey, resource assessment, and produces a Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map should be conducted. The woodland survey and resource assessment consists of:

- delineating tree stands,
- identifying and classifying wooded areas by type and condition,
- assessing ecological functions as well as conservation values of wooded areas within the jurisdiction and adjacent jurisdictions,
- identifying, classifying, and assessing other natural resources (i.e., wetlands, farmlands, areas occupied by rare plant and animal species, and projected green spaces), and
- identifying watershed, drainage, topography, soil types, existing infrastructures, and areas of significant historical and cultural values.

Following the woodland survey and resource assessment, a Comprehensive Landscape
Creating a Conservation Plan

A conservation plan, based on the resource inventory and assessment data and Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map should be created by:

- identifying and locating wooded areas,
- identifying and locating sites for main transportation systems and utility infrastructure,
- selecting wooded areas to conserve,
- identifying developable areas.

including:
- larger tracts or remnant wooded areas,
- wooded areas that have potential to be connected to others,
- wooded areas with significant ecological functions and conservation values,
- wooded areas occupied by rare plant and animal species,
- areas with reforestation and restoration potential.

Figure 3-1. Examples of methods to incorporate trees into existing neighborhoods, new developments, and watersheds. Source: Fazio 2003.
Once all of the above areas have been identified and recorded on the Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map, the map should be entered in a Geographic Information System (GIS) and shared with other local and regional units of government, developers, builders, and private organizations to promote continuity and connectivity of wooded areas across the landscape and enhance coordination and partnerships among all stakeholders. Developers and builders should also be included in this process and be informed of conservation goals and wooded areas set aside for conservation.

**Identify and Select Land Protection Strategies**

Following the development of a Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map and identification of wooded areas to conserve, appropriate land-protection options should be selected. Options available to local and regional units of government include use of zoning and subdivision ordinances and consideration of other conservation and protection options.

When drafting ordinances to promote conservation of wooded areas:

≈ gather input from developers, builders, and citizen organizations,
≈ integrate conservation values in zoning codes and policies,
≈ identify developable subdivisions and conservation zoning districts in the comprehensive plans,
≈ determine the type of development to be allowed using information contained in the Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map,
≈ promote flexible subdivision ordinances that encourage variable lot sizes and configurations, street width and setbacks according to traffic, utility types and easements, and creative development plans,
≈ draft local woodland and tree-protection ordinances for both public and private property,
≈ provide incentives to reduce impervious surfaces (including reduced road width, setbacks, parking lots, or provision of additional lots, tax incentives, and public recognition or awards),
≈ promote the use of joint utility easements and trenches for underground utilities and rights of way for overhead lines,
≈ create a local natural resource advisory board to foster participation of community organizations including citizens, nonprofit organizations, developers, builders, and contractors,
≈ create conservation overlay districts in the jurisdiction using comprehensive plans and zoning ordinances, and determine urban growth boundaries for infrastructure (i.e., new water and sewer lines),
≈ provide incentives to promote or mandate implementation of conservation designs such as conservation zoning designs, open space designs, conservation subdivision designs, and cluster
Guidelines for Conserving Wooded Areas

- Development designs,
- Set up conservation standards based on sound protection options of wooded areas (e.g., promotion of the conservation of 50 to 70% of wooded areas in residential zoning districts as natural wooded open space),
- Promote new and flexible approaches to conservation (e.g., dedicate 15 acres of land for park, playground, and public open space for every 1,000 residents or prohibit development on wooded areas of 10 acres or larger), and
- Provide a management strategy to maintain and enhance the quality of protected wooded areas (the strategy should have an education component for the public and include frequent assessments of tree and forest health, fire hazards, and wood utilization).

Other conservation and land protection options that have been developed to assist landowner and local units of government include:

- Conservation easements,
- Land-retirement programs,
- Property tax-relief programs,
- Restoration cost-share programs,
- Registry programs,
- Land transfers,
- Deed restrictions,
- Mutual covenants,
- Management agreements,
- Land donations,
- Land sales to conservation buyers,
- Land exchanges, and
- Transfer of development rights.

BMPs to Conserve Wooded Areas at the Subdivision Level

Define Goals

Goals to consider in land development should include:

- Conservation of green corridors,
- Conservation of wooded areas as natural open space or a conservancy area, and
- Protection of individual trees.

Inventory and Assessment of the Resource

Resource inventory and assessment at the subdivision level should follow the same steps as those conducted at the landscape level, but at the smaller scale of the subdivision. Generally, the resource inventory and assessment for a subdivision is accomplished in three steps:

- Evaluate existing resource information (obtained from larger scale resource inventory and assessments, including any local zone and tree preservation ordinances),
- Conduct site review and survey trees (including identification and location of wooded areas and other natural resources, and delineation of potential wooded areas to protect).

The site review and tree survey is conducted by:
- Obtaining aerial photography
(available through tax assessor),
• incorporating remote sensing data,
• identifying and locating wooded areas and other land types, and
• delineating potential wooded areas to protect, such as:
  • wooded areas protected or identified by local, state, and federal laws, policies, and/or regulations (i.e., wetlands, greenways, and natural areas),
  • wooded flood plains, wooded stream corridors, steep wooded slopes, and buffer zones, and
  • remnant tracts of wooded areas at least one acre in size with healthy trees.
≈ create a Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map for the subdivision that will be used as the basic tool from which all decisions related to the development will be made.

Figure 3-2. A comprehensive Landscape Resource Map of a subdivision such as this example from North Oaks, Minnesota shows location of wooded areas, individual trees, water bodies, proposed developable sites, and conservancy areas. Source: Minnesota DNR 2000.
Create a Wooded Area Protection Plan

Using the subdivision Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map, develop a protection plan which includes:

≈ selection and delineation of wooded areas to protect, considering the following steps:
  • record location of wooded areas to be protected based on the goals and information provided on the resource map,
  • record all areas likely to be adversely impacted during construction,
  • record areas that can be used for reforestation and/or restoration,
  • locate and delineate developable and buildable sites, and
≈ submission of development plan for approval which should be collectively reviewed by the developer and the county, city, or township planner.

Select a Protection Method

Once the development plan is approved, the developer and/or builder should select the protection method that consists of several steps:

≈ determine the grading area and method,
≈ define reforestation plan and method (should select suitable tree species planting design to meet intended goals), and
≈ record trees to be transplanted to other locations.

Monitor and Evaluate the Conservation Plan

If a conservation plan is to succeed, participation and commitment of all parties involved in the development project is essential. Plan monitoring and evaluation should include:

≈ education of those involved regarding goals and tree protection measures,
≈ site inspection which includes frequent visits to the site to check for violations of tree protection plans, and
≈ financial penalties for violations (may be monetary or replacement of trees).

BMPs to Protect Trees at the Lot Level: New Construction, Remodeling, and Redevelopment

Recommended Practices

Proactive planning and use of appropriate approaches and tools can guarantee greater protection and conservation of wooded areas and trees during construction. To achieve protection goals, the following steps should be taken:

≈ Define goals, including:
  • protection of wooded areas and trees from construction damage,
  • compliance with zoning regulations, conservation easements, and
• maintenance and enhancement of community aesthetics and property values.

≈ Inventory and assess trees by:
• obtaining or drawing a boundary map of the lot,
• recording the location of all trees and wooded areas,
• conducting a tree survey and health assessment, including:
  • tree species and age class, and
  • health condition (i.e., trunk form, crown form, and overall condition), and
• recording tree survey and health assessment information on the Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map.

≈ Select trees or groups of trees to protect, using these criteria:
• select trees or groups of trees as needed to comply with any local tree preservation ordinances,
• select trees and wooded areas found within conservation easements or covenants,
• select trees that are suitable to the site conditions (e.g., native species and trees with desirable growth characteristics),
• select trees that provide direct benefits (e.g., wildlife habitat,
shade, windbreak, screening, privacy, etc.),
• select trees that are connected to other trees (e.g., groups or lines of trees) on adjoining property to achieve connectivity,
• pay particular attention to younger trees that may have greater tolerance for site disturbance during construction,
• identify protected trees with colored ribbon, and
• record location of tree and species name on the Comprehensive Landscape Resource Map.
≈ Select building sites and construction zones and identify other areas such as setbacks, easements, and areas dedicated to conservation.
≈ Create a tree protection plan by determining and delineating the protected root zone.
≈ Select and implement tree protection method, and
≈ Monitor and evaluate by:
  • visiting the building site to check for any disturbance or violation of the tree protection plan,
  • calling for a tree survival and replacement plan to be extended from two to five years following construction,
  • imposing financial penalties, and
  • making referrals to other clients for builders or contractors who do an exceptional job of protecting trees during construction.

D.R. Hartel, USDA Forest Service, www.urbanforetrysouth.org
Chapter 4: Guidelines for Protecting Urban and Community Streams

Protecting Urban and Community Streams

Areas containing urban streams must be given special consideration because development in these areas can have a profound impact on stream hydrology, morphology, water quality, and biodiversity. Because development is often a gradual process spanning decades and wide regions of the landscape, stream protection strategies must address the comprehensive protection of stream quality throughout the entire development process.

A local urban stream protection strategy has six primary components roughly corresponding to each stage of a normal development cycle from zoning, planning, site design, construction, stabilization, to final occupancy. These components are watershed-based zoning or land use planning, protection of sensitive areas, establishment of buffer networks, reduction of impervious cover in site design, limitations on erosion during construction, quantity and quality treatment of stormwater runoff, and maintenance of stream protection measures.

Watershed-based Zoning or Land Use Planning

To a large extent, the future quality of an urban stream is determined by community land-use decisions. Therefore, careful consideration must be given to these streams during the zoning planning process.

The underlying premise of watershed-based zoning holds that impervious cover, not population density, is a superior measure of growth impact. Based upon the variable of impervious cover, it is possible to classify and manage streams within a community using the sequence of steps involved in watershed-based zoning below.

Step 1. Conduct a comprehensive physical, chemical, and biological stream inventory to assess the current quality of urban and community streams.

Step 2. Refine/verify impervious cover/stream quality relationships and identify sensitive stream systems.

Step 3. Measure and map existing and future impervious cover at the subwatershed level and, if possible, project future impervious cover growth based on the build-out of existing zoning.

Step 4. Designate subwatersheds into one of three stream quality categories (sensitive, degrading, non-supporting), based on growth patterns and attainable stream quality under existing environmental conditions and the ultimate level of impervious cover.

Step 5. Modify the existing master plan...
Guidelines for Protecting Urban and Community Streams

to meet subwatershed targets and assure that future growth and impervious cover is compatible with the designated stream classification for each subwatershed.

Step 6. Adopt specific stream protection strategies for each subwatershed (including, but not limited to, watershed or site limits on impervious cover, BMP selection criteria, stream buffers, land acquisition, or other protection measures).

Step 7. Incorporate any management priorities that may arise from larger watershed planning efforts (e.g., at the scale of watershed, subbasin, or basin).

Step 8. Implement long-term monitoring and enforcement programs to provide management feedback and assess whether the stream management strategies are achieving stream quality goals set for each subwatershed.

Specific examples of stream protection strategies from watershed-based zoning are included in Appendix C.

Protection of Sensitive Areas

Sensitive areas such as wetlands, flood plains, steep slopes, critical habitats, shorelines, and mature forests can and should be protected through the development, adoption, and enforcement of ordinances that prevent development in these areas. Ordinances should describe how each area will be delineated on-site, and what protective measures will be taken during all stages of any development process. Additionally, it is a good idea to establish a set of performance criteria to protect these areas.

Establishment of Buffer Networks

There are a number of reasons for creating urban riparian forests or urban stream buffers. In both residential and commercial areas, runoff can contain fertilizers, herbicides, pesticides, and other pollutants that can be filtered out by plant roots and broken down by microorganisms and, ultimately, help add and maintain biodiversity in the urban and community environment.

Benefits of Urban and Community Riparian Forests and Stream Buffers

The buffer’s primary value is physical protection of the stream channel from future disturbance or encroachment. A network of buffers acts as a right-of-way for a stream and functions as an integral part of the stream ecosystem but also provides many additional benefits as outlined in Appendix C. In many regions, these benefits are amplified when the streamside management zone is kept in a forested condition.

One of the most important benefits of urban and community streamside buffers is their potential ability to remove harmful pollutants from urban stormwater runoff. On the basis of performance data from related vegetative systems, it is possible to estimate the pollutant removal capacity of an urban riparian or stream buffer. A three zone buffer system like the one described below has the potential to achieve the following pollutant removal rates:
Performance Criteria for Stream Buffers

Planning, design, and maintenance of buffers largely affects the ability of a buffer to realize its many benefits. Examples of practical performance criteria are listed below to govern buffer size, management, crossings, and stormwater treatment. The 10 example criteria include:

1. Minimum total buffer width—According to a national survey, urban stream buffer sizes range from 20 to 200 ft. in width, with a median of 100 ft. In general, a minimum base width of at least 100 ft. (e.g., 3 to 5 mature trees wide on each side of the channel) is recommended for adequate stream protection.

2. Three-zone buffer system—Riparian or stream buffers are typically broken up into three zones, the Undisturbed Forest or Streamside Zone (Zone 1), the Managed Forest or Middle Zone

≈ sediment – 75%,  
≈ total nitrogen – 40%,  
≈ total phosphorus – 50%,  
≈ trace metals – 60 to 70%, and  
≈ hydrocarbons – 75%.

The ability of a particular buffer to remove pollutants, however, depends on many site-specific factors (Appendix C). In the case of stormwater runoff treatment, stream buffer use should be restricted to those conditions where site-specific factors assure reliable pollutant removal.

Figure 4-1. Three zone urban buffer system. Source: MDEQ 1994.
(Zone 2), and the Runoff Control or Outer Zone (Zone 3), each of which performs a different function, has a different width, vegetative target, and management scheme (Figure 4-1) (see Appendix C for full descriptions). Prescriptions are usually based on climatic zone, soil types, soil drainage characteristics, and available and desired tree and shrub species. As an example, on a poorly drained site in the South, recommendations may call for:

≈ Zone 1—river birch and black willow for bank stabilization,
≈ Zone 2—cherrybark oak and loblolly pine as filtering mechanisms, and
≈ Zone 3—maidencane and gray dogwood for grass and shrub runoff control. For prescriptions on various soil types and drainage capacities and planting recommendations for urban riparian forests in the South see Appendix C.

3. Pre-development vegetative target—Generally, the vegetative target should be based on the natural vegetative community present in the floodplain, as determined from reference riparian zones.

4. Buffer expansion and contraction—The
average width of Zone 2 can be expanded to include:

≈ the full extent of the 100-year floodplain,
≈ all undeveloped steep slopes (greater than 25%),
≈ four additional feet of buffer for each 1% increment of slope above 5%, and
≈ any adjacent delineated wetlands or critical habitats.

The buffer can also be contracted to accommodate unusual or historical development patterns, shallow lots, stream crossings, or stormwater ponds.

5. Buffer delineation—Three key decisions must be made when delineating buffer boundaries.

≈ At what mapping scale will streams be defined? The traditional scale is the blue lines present on the United States Geological Service (USGS) 7.5 minute quadrangle maps 1:24,000 (1 in = 2,000 ft.).

≈ Where does the stream begin and the buffer end? Generally, the stream origin is the point where an intermittent stream forms a distinct channel.

≈ From what point should the inner edge of the buffer be measured? Inner edge can be measured from the centerline of small first- or second-order streams and from the top of each streambank for third- and higher order streams.

6. Buffer crossings—Provisions must be made for linear forms of development that must cross the stream or buffer such as roads, bridges, fairways, underground utilities, enclosed storm drains, or outfall channels. Performance criteria such as crossing width, crossing angle, crossing frequency, and crossing elevation should be used to minimize impact to the continuity of the buffer network and fish passage.

7. Stormwater runoff—Buffers can be an important component of the stormwater treatment system at a development site. This role is discussed later in the Section “Treatment of Stormwater Runoff.”

8. Buffers during plan review and construction—During each stage of the development process, limits and uses of stream buffer systems should be well-defined.

9. Buffer education and enforcement—Creating high buffer visibility and encouraging greater buffer awareness and stewardship among adjacent residents will help protect the integrity of a buffer system. Steps that will aid in increasing visibility and awareness include:

≈ marking buffer boundaries with permanent signs that describe allowable uses,
educating buffer owners about benefits and uses of buffers with pamphlets, streamwalks, and meetings with homeowners associations,
≈ ensuring that new owners are fully informed about buffer limits/uses when property is sold or transferred,
≈ engaging residents in a buffer stewardship program that includes reforestation and backyard “bufferscaping” programs, and
≈ conducting annual bufferwalks to check on encroachment.

10. Buffer flexibility—Incorporating several simple measures into buffer ordinances, such as maintaining buffers in private ownership, buffer averaging, and density compensation, variances, and conservation easements will help alleviate concerns that buffer requirements could represent an uncompensated taking of private property.

Ordinances for Stream Buffers
To better utilize stream buffers as specific planning tools to protect stream quality and aquatic habitat, ordinances specifying the size and management of the stream buffer should be drafted. The model ordinance provided in Appendix C includes 10 sections that provide suggested language or technical guidance to create the most effective stream buffer zones possible. While much of the model is based on Baltimore County, Maryland’s regulations for the water quality, stream, wetland, and floodplain protection, additional features and language have been added in certain sections to enhance the protective functions of the proposed stream buffer.

The language in the sample model ordinance is only intended to provide suggestions for possible wording of a community’s own buffer regulation; it is not meant to be adopted word-for-word. Local situations and concerns will dictate what modifications of the ordinance language will be required. In areas with coastal and estuarine habitats, location- and vegetation-specific language should be added. Coastal and estuarine areas will also want to address important offshore features such as shellfish beds and migratory bird nesting areas that are influenced by nutrient and pollutant runoff. Additionally, regions may adjust buffer width sizes according to rain fall amounts or other climatic variables. Finally, political situations within a community may also influence the final choice of buffer width standards, making flexibility in stream buffer zone establishment very important.

While the wording of buffer regulations is flexible, several features were determined to be integral in developing the most effective ordinance possible:
≈ The establishment of a minimum stream buffer width. A width of at least 100 feet is recommended to recognize all the benefits that the stream buffer can provide.
≈ The creation of a three-zone buffer system with the functions, widths, vegetative targets, and management schemes
for each zone explained in detail.

≈ Language that creates the ability to expand the buffer to include the 100-year floodplain, steep slopes, and any adjacent delineated wetlands or critical habitats.

≈ A thorough explanation of the limits and uses of the stream buffer system and requirements expected for any development plan during the entire development process—from initial plan review through construction.

≈ A system to permanently mark the buffer, both physically on-site, and in the land records, should be enacted.

≈ A designated management system for the buffer, detailing permitted and restricted uses within the buffer, and an educational program that guarantees future residents know about the buffer.

≈ Any waivers or variances which may be granted regarding the buffer should be explained in detail to avoid legal challenges.

≈ Maintenance guidelines and enforcement procedures for buffer violations should be included.

A strong buffer ordinance is only the first step to preserving stream buffers. Communities will also need an effective buffer program that includes the stream buffer performance criteria previously discussed to manage buffers and enforce buffer regulations. Additionally, during the construction phase, communities must make sure that the clearing and grading permit is well-integrated with the forest buffer application. Following construction, programs educating citizens about the importance of the buffer and how to manage it, can help preserve the buffer’s integrity.
Guidelines for Construction Sites

Development areas such as residential subdivisions should utilize low impact development principles acknowledging the roles of trees in the planning process. Trees are relatively inexpensive and very effective in preventing on-site erosion. Beyond just reducing the impacts of rainfall they, along with other vegetation on-site, reduce the velocity of stormwater runoff. Tree roots hold soil in place and also increase water infiltration.

Disturbance

When undertaking a construction project, the goal should always be to disturb the smallest area possible for the shortest time period. During the course of a project, disturbed areas should be revegetated with native species as soon as possible. Both temporary and permanent seeding is most often required. Temporary seeding is the planting of fast-growing annual grasses to hold the soil in place in areas that will not be disturbed again for 30 or more days. After this stabilizing process is initiated, plans should be made for more permanent seeding. A list of recommended species and seed choices for Mississippi can be located in Appendix D.

In many cases, additional cultural treatments are required to promote the growth of vegetation. Examples include topsoil replenishment, soil scarification, aeration, fertilization, and irrigation. Soils that cannot be seeded in the off season should be mulched to provide protection until seeding can be initiated. Mulch holds moisture, dampens temperature extremes, and retards erosion on steep slopes during seed establishment. In larger areas with a high potential for erosion, the cost of erosion and sediment controls greatly increase. Therefore, it is sensible to keep on-site vegetation disturbance to a minimum.

Vegetative Preservation

Where possible, all vegetation should be preserved on-site to function as a buffer zone in public areas. This is particularly important for trees since they are more expensive to establish after development and harder to reestablish according to the size and characteristics (e.g., height, form) of the original trees. In addition, trees also serve as a buffer among themselves, thus enhancing their chances for survival.

Steps to prevent encroachment into the buffer zone during construction include:

- marking buffer limits on all plans used during construction,
- conducting a preconstruction stakeout of buffers to define limit of disturbance,
marking limit of disturbance with silt or snow fence barriers and signs to prevent the entry of construction equipment and stockpiling, and
≈ familiarizing contractors with limit of disturbance through a preconstruction walk-through.

Sensitive Areas
When possible, sensitive areas should not be disturbed. These areas include steep and/or unstable slopes, land upslope from surface waters, areas with erodible soils, and existing drainage channels. There may also be unique areas or floral and faunal habitats on the property that warrant special attention.

Erosion Controls
There is a strong correlation between pervious, vegetated ground space and reduced stormwater runoff. When possible, construction site runoff should be spread out over all buffer zone lengths. Specific recommendations call for minimums that include:
≈ 15-foot wide buffer zone for preserved vegetation, and
≈ 150-foot buffer zone adjacent to perennial streams and water bodies.
Divert upslope water around disturbed areas and slow rainfall runoff velocities to avoid erosion. Transport runoff down steep slopes through channels lined with natural vegetation or, if absolutely necessary, through piping.

Figure 5-1. Perspective view of vegetative filter strips. Source: MDEQ 1994.
Vegetative Filter Strips

Vegetated filter strips or buffers are areas of either natural or established vegetation that are maintained to protect the water quality of neighboring areas (Figure 5-1). Buffer zones reduce the velocity of stormwater runoff, provide an area for runoff to permeate the soil, contribute to ground water recharge, and act as filters to catch sediment. The reduction in velocity also helps prevent soil erosion. Vegetated buffers can be used in any area that is able to support vegetation, but they are most effective and beneficial on floodplains, near wetlands, along streambanks, and on steep, unstable slopes. They are also effective in separating land use areas that are not compatible, and in protecting wetlands or water bodies by displacing activities that might be potential sources of non-point source pollution.

Vegetated buffers require plant growth before they can be effective, and land on which to plant the vegetation must be available. If the land cost is very high, buffer zones might not be cost-effective; therefore, it is important to conserve and maintain native vegetation on any land whenever possible. Although vegetated buffers help protect water quality, they usually do not effectively counteract concentrated stormwater flows to neighboring or downstream wetlands.

Mulching

Mulching is a temporary erosion control practice in which materials such as grass, wood chips, wood fibers, or gravel are placed on exposed or recently planted soil surfaces. Mulching is highly recommended as a stabilization method and most effective when used in conjunction with vegetation establishment. In addition to stabilizing soils, mulching can reduce stormwater runoff velocity. When used in combination with seeding or planting, mulching can aid plant growth by holding seeds, fertilizers, and topsoil in place, preventing birds from eating seeds, retaining moisture, and insulating plant roots against extreme temperatures.

Mulching might delay seed germination because the cover changes soil surface temperatures. Mulches themselves are subject to erosion and may be washed away in a large storm, and maintenance is necessary to make certain that mulches provide effective erosion control.

Mulching effectiveness varies according to the type of mulch used. Soil loss reduction for different mulches ranges from 53 to 99.8%. Water velocity reductions range from 24 to 78%. In addition, studies have shown that mulching provides a high rate of sediment and nutrient pollution prevention. Seeding or mulching also adds value to a site that more than offsets the cost of seeding or mulching in the eyes of developers, real estate agents, and home buyers. Costs of seed and mulch average $1,500 per acre and range from $800 to $3,500 per acre.

Inspection and Maintenance

To maintain the effectiveness of construction site stormwater control BMPs, regular inspection of control measures is essential. Generally, inspection and maintenance of BMPs can
be categorized into two groups—expected routine maintenance and nonroutine (repair) maintenance. Routine maintenance refers to checks performed on a regular basis to keep the BMP in good working order and aesthetically pleasing. In addition, routine inspection and maintenance is an efficient way to prevent potential nuisance situations (e.g., odors, mosquitoes, weeds), reduce the need for repair maintenance, and reduce the chance of polluting stormwater runoff by finding and correcting problems before the next rain. Nonroutine maintenance refers to any activity not performed on a regular basis, including, but not limited to, major repairs after a violent storm or extended rainfall, or replacement and redesign of existing control structures. In addition to maintaining the effectiveness of stormwater BMPs and reducing the incidence of pests, proper inspection and maintenance is essential to avoid the health and safety threats (like downstream flooding, property damage, injury, and death) inherent in BMP neglect.

The effectiveness of BMP inspection is a function of the familiarity of the inspector with each particular BMP’s location, design specifications, maintenance procedures, and performance expectations. Documentation should be kept regarding the dates of inspection, findings, and maintenance and repairs that result from the findings of an inspector because such records are helpful in maintaining an efficient inspection and maintenance schedule and provide evidence of ongoing inspection and maintenance.

**Guidelines for Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers**

In urban and community areas, trees and other vegetation can be used as a component of stormwater management for medians, streets, parking lots, and shopping centers.

**Site Factors for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers**

Trees planted between paved traffic lanes (i.e., medians), parking lots, and shopping centers usually endure harsh conditions. Problems include compacted soils that often lack appropriate nutrients for tree growth. In addition, these soils may be excessively drained because of the convex shape of the land or poorly drained from a concave form. Trees that grow naturally in bottomland conditions in Mississippi are suited to urban sites because they have adapted to low oxygen and/or compacted soils. Root space is often the most limiting factor for urban trees. Therefore, providing space for roots to grow and expand is critical and can be provided in grids or channels and connected to buffers, natural areas, and rain gardens. Each potential planting site should have an individual assessment and species recommendation since micro-site conditions vary widely, and numerous species are suitable depending on objectives. A list of recommended uses for native tree species suitable for urban and community forestry activities in the Southeast is located in Appendix D.
Growing Space for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers

Above ground portions of trees must be restricted in size and shape to avoid obstructing pedestrian or driver viewing, and below ground portions must be restricted to a size that will not exceed the available planting area. Upright, vase-like, or oval crowns are preferred over weeping, rounded, spreading, and pyramidal forms (Figure 5-2). Picking the appropriate tree species and proper placement will avoid higher maintenance costs, such as periodic

Figure 5-2. Illustration of variety of tree growth forms and sizes. Source: ISA 2000.
pruning, or, in some cases, tree removal and replacement. A list of physical characteristics for native tree species suitable for urban and community forestry activities in the Southeast is located in Appendix D.

**Environmental Considerations for Trees on Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers**

Trees must be resistant to air pollution from vehicles and nearby industries. Planting a variety of trees will increase diversity, with obvious wildlife and aesthetic benefits. Also, a diverse median forest will lessen the chance of widespread losses from insects or diseases. Trees also need to be wind resistant since vegetation planted on streets, medians, parking lots, and shopping centers will often exist in isolation or in small groupings, thereby leaving them vulnerable to windthrow. Trees in urban areas also need to be somewhat drought resistant. Ambient temperatures are known to be higher in developed areas, thus creating additional stress on trees and other plants. Tolerant species will persist better during dry periods and also require less watering by maintenance crews. A list of environmental characteristics and tolerances for native tree species suitable for urban and community forestry activities in the Southeastern United States is located in Appendix D.

**Recommended Tree Species for Streets, Medians, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers**

An extensive list of trees for medians in Tennessee has been developed. Most of these tree species are also appropriate for Mississippi. Lists of native tree species suitable for urban and community forestry activities and classified by recommended use, physical characteristics, and environmental characteristics and tolerances are included in Appendix D.

**Best Management Practices for Tree Selection and Placement on Streets, Parking Lots, and Shopping Centers**

Finally, before the question of which tree to plant can be answered, a number of factors need to be considered. When selecting trees for placement on streets, parking lots, and shopping centers, the following questions should be asked and answered:

- Why is the tree being planted? Do you want the tree to provide shade, fruit, or seasonal color, or act as a windbreak or screen? Maybe more than one of the above?
- What is the size and location of the

should be a consideration. With established tree stands, there will be a shading effect on the understory, resulting in the reduction of mowing required on medians. Where hardwoods are planted, problems may occur with leaf litter that carries off the median. However, most of the leaf fall will be recycled back into the site as nutrients for the stand of trees.
planning site? Does the space lend itself to a large, medium, or small tree? Are there overhead or below ground wires or utilities in the vicinity? Do you need to consider clearance for sidewalks, patios or driveways? Are there other trees in the area?

≈ What type of soil conditions exist? Is the soil deep, fertile, and well-drained or is it shallow, compacted, and infertile?

≈ What type of maintenance are you willing to provide? Do you have time to water, fertilize and prune the newly planted tree until it is established or will you be relying on your garden or tree service for assistance?

≈ Can trees be planted as a rain garden for the purpose of on-site water treatment? If so, plant at or below grade and create curb cutouts or other inflow mechanisms. Refer to Appendix D for appropriate tree and plant species.

Asking and answering these and other
questions prior to the actual selection process will help you determine the right tree for the right place. If, however, you have any difficulty answering any of these questions, contact your local ISA Certified Arborist, tree care professional, garden center, or county extension agent for assistance. Their assistance will help you to plant the right tree in the right place. Remember, it is far better to get others involved early and make the right decision, than to avoid having to call them later to ask if you made the wrong decision.
Chapter 6: Guidelines for Controlling Stormwater with Urban and Community Trees

Urban and Community Stormwater Pollution

Development in urban and suburban areas transforms snow and rain (aka stormwater) into inadvertent vehicles for pollution, making stormwater one of the most significant water pollution problems in the United States. Many surfaces in our metropolitan areas are impervious, preventing precipitation from being absorbed by the soil, increasing the volume and velocity of water flowing over and off the land surface, causing larger and more frequent floods, and increasing erosion of stream beds and banks.

Additionally, impervious surfaces are often coated with unpleasant and sometimes hazardous materials (i.e., sediments, toxic metal particles, pesticides, herbicides and fertilizers, oil, gasoline and grease, harmful viruses and bacteria, excess nutrients and dust, wastepaper, and trash) resulting from our daily activities. These substances contaminate precipitation runoff as it flows across the land surface, eventually entering the waters we use for drinking, bathing, and recreation (Figure 6-1). Even in urban areas, this water is also used for agricultural or home garden purposes and has negative implications for fish and wildlife.

Figure 6-1. Pollutant accumulation on impervious street and highway surfaces. Source: Lehner et al. 1999.
Increased Imperviousness Leads to: | Resulting Impacts |
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
Increased Volume | • | • | • | • | • |
Increased Peak Flow | • | • | • | • | • |
Increased Peak Flow Duration | • | • | • | • | • |
Increased Stream Temperature | • |
Decreased Base Flow | • |
Changes in Sediment Loadings | • | • | • | • | • |

Figure 6-2. Impacts from increases in impervious surfaces. Source: Lehner et al. 1999.

Annually, degradation from urban stormwater pollution results in millions of dollars lost through government expenditures, illness, or loss of economic output. Furthermore, damage to the environment is at least as significant as that of the economy and would most likely be double or triple that amount. Figure 6-2 illustrates some of the environmental impacts that can occur from increased imperviousness. For example, increased imperviousness can lead to increased water volume which ultimately results in such environmental disasters as flooding, habitat loss, erosion, channel widening, and streambed alteration (Figure 6-2).

**Stormwater Management Strategies**

Until recently, stormwater management most often took the form of flood control and runoff evacuation in an attempt to avoid causing as much damage as possible. In recent years, however, communities have begun using proactive approaches to prevent, control, and treat urban stormwater pollution and have had great success in demonstrating the effectiveness, economic advantages, and benefits of these approaches.

Although controlling and preventing urban stormwater pollution sometimes requires the use of structural controls like subsurface storm sewer systems, many communities have succeeded in controlling stormwater pollution with natural resource-based planning methods like land preservation, strategic land use planning and protection, public education, addressing municipal
operations, creation of wetlands or ponds, infiltration systems at parking lots, or incentives for compliance. The needs and resources of communities will vary, but any of these approaches to stormwater pollution control and prevention can be implemented with a little ingenuity, hard work, and a small amount of cash-flow. Additionally, many of these methods are superior to structural methods because they naturally clean runoff and reduce or avoid significant operation and maintenance costs, and, in some cases, provide recreational opportunities, wildlife refuges, and increased property values.

The best way to ensure that natural resource-based planning is incorporated into a community’s stormwater management plan is through establishment of plan requirements. Stormwater management plans that retain the natural landscape (Chapters 2 and 3), put development in context of local and regional watersheds (Chapters 4 and 5), encourage riparian buffers (Chapter 4), reduce impervious cover (Chapter 6), and emphasize on-site, natural drainage of stormwater through the use of trees (Chapters 1, 5, and 6) will make the most of a community’s natural resources.

Reduction of Impervious Cover

During development of site plans, a key objective should be the reduction of impervious cover because increases in impervious cover can increase peak discharge as well as overall discharge rate over time (Figure 6-3). A wide range of site planning tools to reduce impervious cover are outlined in Appendix E. Although full utilization of these tools may be hampered due to existing local zoning regulations or subdivision codes, many can be creatively adapted to fit any situation and lead to narrower streets, green parking lots, and clustered subdivisions.

Limitations on Erosion During Development

When vegetation is cleared and a site is graded for future development, the impacts to urban streams can be particularly severe because trees and topsoil are removed, soils exposed to erosion, steep slopes cut, natural topography and drainage altered, and sensitive areas often disturbed. These destructive processes can be mitigated through the use of clearing restrictions, erosion prevention, and sediment controls.

Maintenance of Stream Protection Measures

If the desired level of stream protection is to be maintained over many decades, a concerted effort to inspect, maintain, and restore stream protection measures (e.g., riparian buffers and filter strips) that have been put in place must be made. Ideally, maintenance of many stream protection measures can be accomplished through public outreach efforts to educate residents on how they can prevent pollution in the watershed and periodically monitor stream quality.

Treatment of Stormwater Runoff

On a well-planned, properly designed site, the installation of urban stormwater BMPs to treat the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff can partially mitigate the impacts of
development on urban streams. Such BMPs include ponds, wetlands, filters, and infiltration systems designed to replicate predevelopment hydrology and water quality. Some guidelines for stormwater BMPs include: encouraging natural and vegetated stormwater controls; ensuring maintenance of roads, lots, catch basins, and structural BMPs; supporting restoration where effective; and encouraging redevelopment and infilling to avoid further sprawl.

Wherever possible, trees should be incorporated to assist with other natural and structural stormwater controls. By working in combination with these other controls, trees can provide a comprehensive solution to rainfall interception, runoff, and landscape water use. Backyard cisterns can capture roof runoff and provide supplemental irrigation. Swales can help to hold stormwater overflow. Lawn-area retention basins can facilitate infiltration, and grates or drywells can capture driveway runoff.

Further strategies to enhance and incorporate the urban forest into control and treatment of stormwater runoff include:

≈ planting more trees in appropriate places,
≈ improving maintenance of existing trees,
≈ planting species with a higher rate of
growth, where appropriate,
≈ planting species with architectural features that maximize interception,
≈ matching species to rainfall patterns,
≈ planting trees in groves, where possible,
≈ planting low water-use species,
≈ planting broadleaf evergreens where appropriate and avoiding south-facing windows, and
≈ using native plants, which, once established can easily withstand summer dry seasons and reduce the need for supplemental irrigation.

Goals and Recommended Actions for Urban and Community Stormwater Programs

When planning, implementing, or improving urban and community stormwater programs, communities should consider the following goals or recommended actions:

≈ **Plan in advance and set clear goals.** Programs should be carefully planned rather than reacting to opportunities, crises, or pressure. Careful planning allows development of more efficient and cost-effective actions and guarantees that issues and concerns of all stakeholders are addressed.

≈ **Encourage and facilitate broad participation.** Multiple levels of government, key community members, and professionals from a variety of related disciplines should be included in the planning and development process.

All stakeholders should be included in overall growth plans, individual site development, educational efforts, and construction programs.

≈ **Work to prevent pollution first; rely on structural treatment only when necessary.** Focus should be placed in prevention-based approaches like regional and watershed planning, local zoning ordinances, preservation of natural areas, stormwater-sensitive site design, widespread compliance with dumping and connection prohibitions, erosion prevention, and broad-based education. Native trees and vegetation should be incorporated instead of, or in addition to, structural treatments. Utilizing trees’ natural abilities to remove pollutants, and intercept and store stormwater is an environmentally friendly and economically sound alternative.

≈ **Establish and maintain accountability.** All parties need a clear statement of their performance standards and need to be held accountable by all the others to accomplish it. Local officials should set clear standards and incentives, conduct routine monitoring, promote public availability of stormwater runoff plans and permits, and enforce laws and regulations in a firm and consistent fashion.

≈ **Create a dedicated funding source.** Funding stability is critical to program
success and community support. Stormwater fees as well as stormwater utilities are good solutions to funding dilemmas.

- Tailor strategies to the region and setting. Municipalities should consider strategies that are particularly tailored to the region, the specific audience, and the problem, remembering that, while the basic framework of effective strategies may work anywhere, different locales may also require different solutions.

- Build broad-based programs. Effective stormwater programs should include and encourage planning, education, public participation, regulation, monitoring, and enforcement. The program’s success may hinge upon the public’s understanding of the issue, how it relates to them, and what they can do about it. Additionally, public-public and private-public collaborative opportunities should be investigated.

- Evaluate and allow for the evolution of programs. Programs should be based upon clear goals and priorities but be flexible enough to evolve as new issues arise, new technologies and strategies are developed, and the community or watershed changes.

- Recognize the importance of associated community benefits. Communities and local officials should recognize that stormwater runoff pollution prevention measures offer direct and indirect quality-of-life benefits.

The key goals above, when considered collectively, will build a strong framework for effective, efficient, and successful long-term stormwater runoff management.

Specific Strategies for Stormwater Runoff Management

Most stormwater runoff management strategies can be addressed by one of five broad project types: addressing stormwater in new development and redevelopment, promoting public education and participation, controlling construction site runoff, detecting and eliminating improper or illegal connections and discharges, or implementing pollution prevention for municipal operations. Strategies for each project type will be discussed below.

Addressing Stormwater Runoff in New Development and Redevelopment

Land use and development represents the most important category of stormwater runoff strategies because it encompasses a wide range of measures, from regional planning to the use of site-specific structural and nonstructural measures. These measures are most applicable in areas of new development or redevelopment; other elements of stormwater runoff treatment programs will need to be used in developed areas. However, one of the most beneficial characteristics of land use and development measures is that they can be applied area-wide or site-specifically using the appropriate BMPs.
Area-Wide Measures

Comprehensive non-structural runoff control strategies and area-wide planning are critical to the prevention of adverse environmental and economic impacts associated with urbanization because they protect the natural stormwater system, minimize the creation of impervious surfaces, and minimize the generation of pollutants.

Many states have enacted growth management regimes in an effort to reduce the amount of new development and associated impervious cover. Alternatives to automobile transportation such as bicycle routes and paths, mass transit, and car pooling can reduce impervious cover as well as pollutant discharge. Concentrating development near transportation and commercial services reduces vehicle miles traveled and associated infrastructure amounts. There are also noticeable reductions in air and water pollution.

Watershed planning allows municipalities to determine what land uses are consistent with desired conditions in water bodies and helps create ordinances that designate new development and land use changes to appropriate levels, types, and locations for water bodies of concern.

Under performance zoning, uses for parcels of land are not specified. Instead, performance standards are set for open space preservation, impervious surface area, maximum pollutant emissions, or other criteria the municipality deems important. These approaches help preserve or enhance the desired character of a community and protect natural resources that are important to residents and can reduce the cost of providing community services such as public safety, water and sewer service, and roads.

Reuse and renovation of existing commercial buildings or industrial sites provides an
opportunity for economic development with little or no addition of impervious cover, allows business and citizens to take advantage of existing municipal infrastructure, reduces pressure to develop current natural areas, and revives urban neighborhoods.

Site Design Measures

Minimizing imperviousness on a site is more prevention-focused and cost-effective than treating stormwater runoff and also much more cost-effective than restoring water bodies after pollution or damage has occurred.

Conservation-design development seeks to cluster or concentrate homes on a small percentage of land comprising a subdivision and leaves the rest of the land as open space. Consequently, the amount of impervious road surface created is reduced and a much greater percentage of undeveloped land is preserved.

Developers in commercial and municipal sites have also implemented alternative parking arrangements such as lot sharing, planning for average parking demands, placing parking areas between commercial buildings, and constructing multistory parking garages to minimize imperviousness.

Another technique to reduce overall imperviousness is the use of porous pavement which allows water to pass through it into the soil while retaining enough strength to support vehicular traffic. Porous pavement is typically used in the construction of parking lots as a built-in stormwater treatment device and can also be modified to accept runoff from surrounding areas and rooftops.

Another, more comprehensive approach to site-specific planning is the traditional neighborhood development (TND). Like conservation-design developments, TNDs seek to minimize impervious cover in the built environment and preserve open space through compact development patterns that feature narrower roads, shared alleyways, smaller lots, and smaller street front setbacks. However, TNDs also incorporate mixed-use development by providing stores, offices, schools, day-care centers, recreational opportunities, and mass-transit facilities within a short walk of residents’ homes, thereby providing the option of walking rather than driving.

Site-Specific/Structural Runoff Control and Treatment Best Management Practices

While the management measures mentioned above are the most efficient and cost-effective methods of stormwater runoff pollution prevention, these measures may not always be adequate to deal with stormwater runoff problems caused by new development or redevelopment. In such cases, it may be necessary for municipalities to resort to site-specific runoff control and treatment through structures engineered to remove contaminants from runoff and control its flow. Such so-called “structural” management measures include detention practices, biofiltration and bioretention practices, infiltration practices, filtration practices, and natural drainage systems. A list of other structural and non-structural BMPs is included in Appendix E.
Detention Practices

Detention practices temporarily store stormwater runoff and discharge it through an outlet structure into water bodies. Typically, detention practices are accomplished through wet or dry detention ponds. In dry detention ponds, all water is released within a designated time period. In wet detention ponds, water is retained for longer periods of time and may remain permanently. Subsequently, wet detention ponds can be both aesthetically and recreationally appealing (Figure 6-4).

Fundamentally, detention ponds are created to reduce peak flows, thereby improving water quality and allowing settling of sediments and other contaminants. Additionally, since wet detention ponds retain water longer and often contain aquatic flora and fauna, they can aid in biofiltration practices.

Biofiltration and Bioretention Practices

Biofiltration and bioretention practices use plants to filter stormwater and reduce contaminant loadings. The benefits of using plants as an additional filter medium are two-fold: absorption of nutrients and metals and slowing of stormwater flow. Bioretention areas likewise capture runoff and allow slow infiltration, enhancing pollutant removal and water cooling.

Communities and municipalities wishing to control stormwater use such types of biofiltration as constructed wetlands, engineered filter strips, and swales. All of these biofiltration methods share the use of native vegetation (i.e., reeds, wetland plants, grasses, trees, shrubs, and vines) to filter stormwater as it

Figure 6-4. Example of a wet detention pond. Source: Center for Watershed Protection 1998.
flows across or through structures.

**Infiltration Practices**

Infiltration practices reduce peak flows by using basins to temporarily store runoff and allow slow water percolation into the soil. In fact, correctly installed and designed and regularly maintained infiltration practices closely resemble the natural process of infiltration that occurred prior to the increase of impervious cover, and are among the most effective structural BMPs.

**Natural Drainage Systems**

One specific approach to site-specific, natural stormwater control is through the use of natural drainage systems (NDS). NDS, as an alternative to traditional drainage systems, provides higher levels of environmental protection for receiving waters at a lower cost. In NDS projects, natural features such as open, vegetated swales, stormwater cascades, and small wetland ponds are incorporated to mimic natural functions lost to urbanization (i.e., infiltration, pollutant removal, and aesthetics). Additionally, NDS provides a number of benefits over traditional drainage systems, including easier integration into the landscape; more natural appearance than engineered systems; elimination of the need for more costly conveyance systems, detention facilities, and mitigation; and impervious surface reduction. Figure 6-5 illustrates the difference between a street with and without NDS.

Because street right of ways are frequently underutilized functionally and aesthetically, they

Figure 6-5. Example of street without natural drainage systems (left) and with natural drainage systems. City of Seattle 2004.
represent particularly appropriate targets for NDS. In fact, applying NDS design alternatives can help communities reach:

\[ \approx \text{drainage goals,} \]

- meet detention requirements/goals,
  and
- meet water quality requirements;

\[ \approx \text{pedestrian and emergency vehicle safety and access,} \]

- provide porous sidewalks,
- allow safe pedestrian access from car to sidewalk, and
- allow emergency vehicle access through neighborhood;

\[ \approx \text{biological goals,} \]

- optimize use of space so trees can be planted,
- promote healthy tree and vegetation root growth,
- reduce competition between roots and pipes, and
- use right-of-way area as public open space amenity;

\[ \approx \text{maintenance goals,} \]

- inspire neighborhood participation, and
- provide easy access to infrastructure; and

\[ \approx \text{financial goals,} \]

- lower or neutral in cost than traditional drainage systems.

**Natural Drainage System Design Alternatives**

Numerous environmentally sound and economically viable design alternatives are available for use within street right-of-ways. Each alternative will have different capabilities of conveying stormwater. Discussed below are several alternatives, in order of increasing capability to convey stormwater.

**Tree Retention**

Retaining trees all ready in place on a site helps avoid the costs of removing the tree, establishing and maintaining a younger tree, and capitalizes on the natural drainage abilities of the tree. Designing around these trees allows the interception and evapotranspiration capabilities of the site to be maintained.

**Tree Pit Enhancement**

Where problems with ponding on sidewalks exist, tree pit areas should be widened. Exposing a larger soil area allows greater infiltration, reduces water problems, and increases water for vegetation. In addition, larger tree pits create the opportunity for planting native flowers, shrubs, or vines, which can enhance the aesthetics of the right-of-way.

**Infiltration and Conveyance Trench**

Even traditional infiltration trenches spaced in planting strips can be adapted to better convey and absorb water. A meandering trench within the planting strip allows exposed gravel to be arranged in a more aesthetically pleasing manner. Infiltration and conveyance trenches with planting strips ≥8 feet with a slope of 1 to 6%, and a rock trench 2 to 3 feet wide and 2 to 3 inches deep can adequately drain an adjacent sidewalk or sidewalk plus road. Sizing
and rock type will vary according to goal.

**Linear Bioretention Systems**

When stormwater runoff enters a planting strip, it passes through the mulch or gravel layer, infiltrates into and filters through the soil, and steadily moves down gradient along the length of the strip. The filtered runoff is then conveyed through an exit pipe to the main stormwater system. The use of amended soil in these planting strips promotes vegetative health, runoff infiltration, and water quality. Experimental amended soil mixes with predominantly sandy soil and enough planting soils and compost to sustain vegetation growth have been successful in Seattle, Washington and would be applicable in other parts of the U.S. Linear bioretention systems with a planting strip 4 to 5 feet wide, a soil depth of 2 to 3 feet, a ponded water depth of 1 to 6 inches, and a slope of 1 to 6% will adequately drain an adjacent sidewalk or sidewalk plus road. Sites exceeding 4% slope will require check dams, and larger, steeper drainage areas will likely require surface treatment with gravel instead of mulch. Sizing varies according to goal.

**Subsurface Linear Bioretention System**

In ultra-urban environments, where space for trees and other vegetation and their roots is minimal, at best, adapted linear bioretention systems can be used. Methods of employing the systems include concrete tree boxes with or without interconnection to other tree boxes, continuous concrete trench boxes with grate tops, or structural soil mixes. Stormwater surface flow enters the systems through curb openings and catch basins.

**Porous Pavement**

Another method of addressing stormwater flows is through the use of porous pavement. Porous pavement reduces the amount of surface flow generated and encourages infiltration by allowing the water to flow through into the pavement’s subbase. The subbase provides detention while water infiltrates into native soil, is filtered, and later discharged through an outlet. Porous pavement can be used over a large surface area with a linear slope of 0 to 5% to adequately drain adjacent street, sidewalk, and rooftop areas. Pavement surface area will vary according to needs and goals.

**Interconnected Vegetated Swales**

Interconnected vegetated swales are modified standard bioswales, the simplest of which is a gradually sloped vegetated ditch connected with culverts under driveways (Figure 6-6). The swales are used to store water volumes generated by adjacent streets and rooftops and achieve overall water quality improvement. Detention swales can be created in several ways, including using undersized culverts to connect the swales so that flow is forced to backup during large storm events and using flow control structures to back flow into the detention areas.

Swale sizing varies according to goal, drainage area, and site slope. Minimum top swale width is ~9 feet; minimum length of swale area is 200 feet, while maximum surface ponding depth is 1 foot. Detention capacity for the
swales is \( \sim 2 \) acres, while conveyance capacity is \( \sim 10 \) acres. Swales are best used in pervious right-of-ways with a width \( \geq 11 \) feet and a linear slope of 2 to 6%. Sites exceeding 4% slope will require check dams and/or surface treatment with gravel instead of mulch.

**Rock and Vegetation Systems**

Velocities of surface flow during storm events can often exceed the infiltration and detention capabilities of standard vegetated practices. When large drainage areas are confined to proportionately small, inadequate conveyance channels, velocities become too high to be controlled. To better convey these flows through vegetated surfaces, channel areas can be armored with rocks or geotextile fabrics and divided by check dams along their entire length.

Due to the large drainage areas of these systems, detaining and treating the full volume of a storm event is not possible without subsurface detention pipes. However, detention and treatment is possible for a portion of the drainage area if cells are designed to maximize available space. Minimum top width is \( \sim 10 \) feet; minimum length is \( \sim 200 \) feet. Maximum surface ponding depth of 1 foot is recommended. Pervious right-of-ways \( \geq 15 \) feet, with a linear slope of 2 to 10% can drain an area of 10 to 35 acres.

It is important to remember that any measure taken to treat or control stormwater runoff must be carefully selected, evaluated, monitored, and maintained to be effective. Some measures will not be appropriate for all areas, soil types, or water tables, and, if applied incorrectly, can cause such problems as pollutant concentration, adverse mineral transformation, reduced effectiveness over time, increased water temperatures, and loss of fish and other aquatic conditions.
organisms. To avoid these and other problems, it is best to use a combination of BMPs to ensure broader treatment, improved effectiveness, and avoid undesirable side effects. All of the above stormwater design options are presented as general information and guidelines. Any application of specific stormwater controls should be designed, installed, and maintained by a professional.

Although post-construction measures and activities like those mentioned above (planning, site design, and structures) represent the most extensive stormwater control measures, the most successful stormwater programs also incorporate public education, construction site controls, elimination of illicit discharges, and improved municipal practices.

Promoting Public Education and Participation

If local governments hope to have a successful stormwater pollution control program, they need, and can get, broader community support. Through day-to-day activities and support for municipal programs and ordinances, individuals can play a key role in reducing stormwater impacts. In fact, many case studies suggest that the effectiveness of BMPs in other programs is directly tied to the effectiveness of public education programs.

The link between local governments and its citizens is formed by public education, outreach, and participation. Citizens can be encouraged to change their habits and routines in activities such as lawn care, car maintenance, pet walking, and other cooperative efforts.

These grass-roots efforts often lay the groundwork for broad-scale municipal stormwater programs.

In previous years throughout the United States, public education programs have been successful in addressing a wide range of activities. Programs can encourage citizens and businesses to reduce chemical pesticide and fertilizer use, switch to natural pesticides and fertilizers, practice alternative landscaping with native plants, and embrace integrated pest management with pest-resistant plants, pest level monitoring, realistic pest tolerance levels, and reliance on alternative pest management strategies. All of these practices, as well as many others, minimize the quantity and toxicity of pesticides used, thus reducing the toxicity of runoff.

Another outlet for public education is through promoting participation in civic stormwater control activities and water quality control monitoring. Neighborhood groups can paint stencils or post signs near storm drains with messages like “Don’t Dump; Drains to Bay” or “Dump No Waste; Drains to Stream” (Figure 6-7). Citizens can take this one step further by helping to monitor water quality in local water bodies, inventory and sample stormwater outfalls, and restore and repair damaged water bodies. The immediate environmental results following these activities provide tangible evidence of the importance and necessity of each individual’s contribution to the project and have proven to be very successful and attractive to the public. However, the key to the success and effectiveness of any education program is
distinguishing among different audiences (i.e., school children, homeowners, business operators, or outdoor recreationists) and providing information directed specifically to them. In this manner, it is possible to focus education efforts and materials on specific sectors of the community or, alternatively, on pollution problems specific to a sector.

Local governments use a variety of public education and outreach activities. They can be as passive as radio and television advertisements, newsletters, brochures, Web sites, toll-free telephone lines, or as active as games, educational activities, and in-school programs for children, workshops and presentations for business and community groups, or tours of areas affected by stormwater pollution. Additionally, local governments can actively seek and encourage participation in public hearings regarding stormwater management ordinances and programs, growth management regimes, approval for highway or residential development projects, public transit planning and budgeting, and other government activities affecting stormwater pollution. Local governments can also encourage public education through mentoring, where experienced volunteers assist newcomers in learning environmentally beneficial practices.

Finally, success in education/outreach programs can be achieved if three goals are accomplished: educate the public about the nature of the urban stormwater pollution problem—its causes and consequences, inform the public about what they can do to solve the problem, and, ultimately, through hands-on education, achieve pollution reduction or restoration targets.

Controlling Construction Site Runoff

Although only one of a number of industries with stormwater impacts, construction impacts are so significant that they are treated separately under federal, state, and local programs. In fact, short-term construction projects

---

Figure 6-7. Example stencils for programs to reduce stormwater pollution. Designs courtesy of A.L. Husak.
can produce as much stormwater pollution as years of other activities. Results from both field studies and erosion models indicate that erosion rates from construction sites are typically an order of magnitude larger than row crops and several orders of magnitude greater than rates from well-vegetated areas, such as forest or pastures. Fortunately, effective construction pollution prevention is politically and economically feasible, can dramatically reduce stormwater pollution, and is beneficial to the developer through increased property values.

Local construction site stormwater management strategies aim to effectively reduce runoff volume to levels that will not cause erosion and to capture as much as possible of the sediment and other pollutants. The most effective local programs rest on four cornerstones: education and training, enforcement, erosion prevention, and sediment control.

Measurable stormwater pollution reduction from construction activities can be achieved through education and enforcement. Successful education programs include essential elements like close cooperation with both local developers and citizen groups, a variety of outreach and communication modes, and clarity in communicating both regulations and technical methods.
Key elements of education and training programs include:

- publishing a brochure, booklet, and/or manual explaining all locally applicable requirements and to the extent possible, consolidating requirements and permits for one-stop permitting,
- holding training workshops for contractors and inviting the public to them as well,
- certifying those who pass a test following a comprehensive training workshop,
- holding pre-construction meetings and on-site walk-throughs prior to initial site work and adjusting the erosion and sediment control (ESC) plan at the construction site, and
- inspecting sites after storms and assessing ESC practices.

No education or training program can be complete or successful without an accompanying method to enforce the regulations and guidelines set forth. Successful enforcement programs include such key elements as:

- supporting county or regional-level enforcement authorities, thus cutting your own costs,
- staffing, legally empowering, funding, training, and certifying an adequately sized team to enforce requirements and inspect sites,
- partnering with citizens and conscientious developers and contractors to watch sites and report violations,
- requiring developers to post bonds against potential damages, and
- requiring regular maintenance of BMPs, including dredge-out of sediment basins.

Common erosion prevention techniques use site planning and construction phasing to minimize unregulated areas exposed at any one time and shelter graded or denuded soil from rain and snow melt. In fact, a 1997 national survey found erosion prevention practices (site design, planning, and phasing) are commonly capable of reducing 90% of suspended solids leaving a construction site. Key elements of successful erosion prevention programs include:

- minimizing needless clearing and grading using site planning, open space, buffer zones, and other protections,
- protecting waterways and stabilizing drainage ways,
- phasing construction to reduce soil exposure,
- immediately covering, revegetating, and stabilizing exposed soils with mulch or other means; at most, using a 14-day limit,
- prohibiting clearing and grading of steep slopes, and
- employing additional measures for sensitive areas such as buffer zones around wetlands, and special protections and prohibitions depending upon slope steepness.

Sediment controls attempt to capture sediment after it has eroded off a hillside or graded...
area. Key elements of sediment control programs include:

- installing controls to filter sediments, including exit controls, and inlet filters at the site perimeter and, on larger sites, throughout the site, and
- employing advanced sediment settling controls, like well-designed and maintained basins.

Incorporating most or all of the above education and training, enforcement, erosion prevention, and sediment control elements will help guarantee the success of stormwater pollution prevention programs.

Detecting and Eliminating Improper or Illegal Connections and Discharges

Identifying and eliminating illicit connections and discharges is one of the simplest and most cost-effective ways for local governments to eliminate some of the worst pollution from stormwater and improve water quality. Two factors are critical to the success of this element of stormwater programs: tracking or finding illicit connections and discharges and enforcement. Routine inspections or system surveys help prevent illicit connections and discharges, and enforcement makes certain that problems are dealt with quickly and appropriately.

Stormwater pollution can occur through intentional activities like dumping waste oil into storm drains or routing wastewater lines to storm sewer systems, but can also occur through simple negligence. Materials stored outside, and oil and chemicals dumped on the ground, are picked up by stormwater and transported to receiving waters. Other occurrences like septic system overflow, sanitary sewer line leaks, car washing, mobile pressure washing, draining swimming pools, and irrigating lawns and gardens likewise discharge pollutants into storm sewers and degrade water quality.

Finding illegal discharges and illicit connections often requires the use of a range of techniques. Municipalities inspect septic systems to confirm they are well-maintained and large enough; landfills; service stations; industrial and commercial sites to make sure pollutants are removed or properly stored; and sanitary sewer systems for leaks and overflows. Additionally, 24-hour hotlines, utility bill fliers, and other educational efforts can help municipalities get the public involved in identifying and reporting illicit discharges and connections.

Finally, effective programs include enforcement such as fines and citations to punish illicit dumping of waste and expedite removal of illicit connections to storm sewers. Municipalities that use enforcement efforts such as these often receive much-needed community support and experience greater motivation to pay attention to education efforts regarding stormwater pollution.

Implementing Pollution Prevention for Municipal Operations

Many operations undertaken by municipalities can affect stormwater quantity and quality. Consequently, local governments should make a concerted effort to manage municipal operations to make a significant positive contribution
to reducing stormwater pollution (as mandated by the federal government’s Clean Water Act Phases I & II and to reduce or eliminate stiff non-compliance penalties). Successful strategies can incorporate municipal activity areas to curb stormwater pollution in a variety of ways, including:

- using, improving, or expanding municipal services provided for other purposes, like street sweeping, leaf and yard waste collection, oil collection and recycling, and trash control;
- enacting frequent and thorough maintenance on municipal vehicles to reduce oil, grease, and metals left on roads and parking lots;
- converting to low-emission or zero-emission vehicles powered by natural gas, electricity, or other alternative energy sources;
- reducing application of pesticides and fertilizers, especially on trees and turf areas, in parks, cemeteries, and highway rights-of-way;
- employing sound landscaping practices such as planting native species and using integrated pest management;
- monitoring and reducing salt and sand application on icy roads;
- incorporating stormwater control requirements in all construction contracts;
≈ properly maintaining structural and nonstructural runoff and erosion control devices;
≈ targeting training and education efforts for every audience (i.e., officials, decision makers, builders/developers, agency personnel, park and utility workers, fleet workers, construction workers, public citizens); and
≈ conducting periodic environmental audits.

Conclusion
An urban and community forestry program can be both economically and socially successful in communities of any size. The key to their success is determining the urban and community forestry needs and desires of the public and then creatively using every available resource (i.e., volunteers, funding, grants, state and federal agencies) at its disposal to achieve program goals. This manual provides assistance and serves as an invaluable guide for communities seeking to fulfill their urban and community forestry needs.
References

Printed Materials


McPherson, E.G., S.E. Maco, J.R. Simpson, P.J. Peper, Q. Xiao, A.M. VanDerZanden,


Mississippi Department of Environmental Quality (MDEQ). 2001. Nonpoint Source Pollution Problems and Solutions. Office of Pollution Control, Water Quality Management Branch, Mississippi Department of Environmental Quality, (Brochure). Jackson,
Mississippi.


Sacramento’s urban forest. Journal of Arboriculture 24(4):235-244.


Additional Printed Materials


Glossary

A

Abatement Reducing the degree or intensity of, or eliminating, pollution.

Absorption The uptake of water, other fluids, or dissolved chemicals by a cell or an organism (as tree roots absorb dissolved nutrients in soil).

Air pollutant Any substance in air that could, in high enough concentration, harm man, other animals, vegetation, or material. Pollutants may include almost any natural or artificial composition of airborne matter capable of being airborne. They may be in the form of solid particles, liquid droplets, gases, or in combination thereof. Generally, they fall into two main groups: (1) those emitted directly from identifiable sources and (2) those produced in the air by interaction between two or more primary pollutants, or by reaction with normal atmospheric constituents, with or without photoactivation. Exclusive of pollen, fog, and dust, which are of natural origin, about 100 contaminants have been identified. Air pollutants are often grouped in categories for ease in classification; some of the categories are: solids, sulfur compounds, volatile organic chemicals, particulate matter, nitrogen compounds, oxygen compounds, halogen compounds, radioactive compounds, and odors.

Air pollution The presence of contaminants or pollutant substances in the air that interfere with human health or welfare, or produce other harmful environmental effects.

Ambient Surrounding or encircling. Often used to describe air and water temperatures.

B

Basin The largest single watershed management unit for water planning that combines the drainage of a series of subbasins. Often has a total area of more than a thousand square miles.

Benefit-cost analysis An economic method for assessing the benefits and costs of achieving alternative health-based standards at given levels of health protection.

Best Management Practices (BMPs) Forest management practices, developed pursuant to federal water quality legislation, to minimize or prevent non-point source water pollution. Often in more general usage referring to any good
forest stewardship practices.

**Biodiversity** Refers to the variety and variability among living organisms and the ecological complexes in which they occur. Diversity can be defined as the number of different items and their relative frequencies. For biological diversity, these items are organized at many levels, ranging from complete ecosystems to the biochemical structures that are the molecular basis of heredity. Thus, the term encompasses different ecosystems, species, and genes.

**Biogenic Volatile Organic Compounds (BVOCs)** Hydrocarbon compounds from vegetation (e.g., isoprene, monoterpene) that exist in the ambient air and contribute to the formation of smog and/or may themselves be toxic.

**Biological integrity** The ability to support and maintain balanced, integrated, functionality in the natural habitat of a given region. Concept is applied primarily in drinking water management.

**Biomass** All of the living material in a given area; often refers to vegetation.

**Bioremediation** Use of living organisms to clean up oil spills or remove other pollutants from soil, water, or wastewater; use of organisms such as non-harmful insects to remove agricultural pests or counteract diseases of trees, plants, and garden soil.

**Bioretention** A technique that uses parking lot islands, planting strips, or swales to collect and filter urban stormwater (may include grass and sand filters, loamy soils, mulch, shallow ponding, and native trees and shrubs).

**Buffer** An area adjacent to a water body, residence, subdivision, place of business, or roadway where development is restricted or prohibited.

**Buffer averaging** A technique of buffer flexibility whereby a buffer is permitted to become narrower at some points along the stream (e.g., to allow for an existing structure or to recover a lost lot), as long as the average width of the buffer meets the minimum requirement.

**Buffer expansion** An increase in the base width of the stream buffer to incorporate floodplains, steep slopes, adjacent wetlands, or to protect higher order streams and rivers.

**Buffer strips** Strips of grass or other erosion-resisting vegetation between or below cultivated strips or fields.

**Carbon sequestration** Annual net rate that a tree removes CO₂ from the atmosphere through the processes of photosynthesis and respiration (kg CO₂/tree/year).

**Catchment** A development pattern that arranges the layout of buildings on a compact
area of the site so as to reserve a portion of the site for common open space or greenspace that is protected in perpetuity.

**Coastal zone** Lands and waters adjacent to the coast that exert an influence on the uses of the sea and its ecology, or whose uses and ecology are affected by the sea.

**Combined sewer overflows** Discharge of a mixture of stormwater and domestic waste when the flow capacity of a sewer system is exceeded during rainstorms.

**Combined sewers** A sewer system that carries both sewage and stormwater runoff. Normally, its entire flow goes to a waste treatment plant, but during a heavy storm, the volume of water may be so great as to cause overflows of untreated mixtures of stormwater and sewage into receiving waters. Stormwater runoff may also carry toxic chemicals from industrial areas or streets into the sewer system.

**Community water system** A public water system which serves at least 15 service connections used by year-round residents or regularly serves at least 25 year-round residents.

**Compliance monitoring** Collection and evaluation of data, including self-monitoring reports, and verification to show whether pollutant concentrations and loads contained in permitted discharges are in compliance with the limits and conditions specified in the permit.

**Compliance schedule** A negotiated agreement between a pollution source and a government agency that specifies dates and procedures by which a source will reduce emissions and, thereby, comply with a regulation.

**Conservation easement** A legal agreement that a property owner makes to restrict the type and amount of development that may take place on his or her property. The easement spells out the right the landowner retains as well as the restrictions on use of the property.

**Consumptive water use** Water removed from available supplies without return to a water resources system, e.g. water used in manufacturing, agriculture, and food preparation.

**Contaminant** Any physical, chemical, biological, or radiological substance or matter that has an adverse effect on air, water, or soil.

**Contamination** Introduction into water, air, and soil of microorganisms, chemicals, toxic substances, wastes, or wastewater in a concentration that makes the medium unfit for its next intended use. Also applies to surfaces of objects, buildings, and various household and agricultural use products.

**Continuous discharge** A routine release to the environment that occurs without interruption, except for infrequent shutdowns for maintenance, process changes, etc.
Conveyance loss  Water loss in pipes, channels, conduits, ditches by leakage or evaporation.

Crossing width  Minimum width of right-of-way to allow for maintenance access of the buffer.

Delineation  The process of drawing or tracing the outline of or sketching out boundaries, edges, areas, etc.

Density compensation  A scheme that grants a developer credit for additional density elsewhere on a site, in compensation for developable land that has been lost due to a buffer requirement.

Direct runoff  Water that flows over the ground surface or through the ground directly into streams, rivers, and lakes.

Discharge  Flow of surface water in a stream or canal or the outflow of ground water from a flowing artesian well, ditch, or spring. Can also apply to discharge of liquid effluent from a facility or to chemical emissions into the air through designated venting mechanisms.

Disturbance  Any event or series of events that disrupt ecosystem, community, or population structure and alters the physical environment.

Diversion  1. Use of part of a stream flow as water supply. 2. A channel with a supporting ridge on the lower side constructed across a slope to divert water at a non-erosive velocity to sites where it can be used and disposed.

Drainage basin  The area of land that drains water, sediment, and dissolved materials to a common outlet at some point along a stream channel.

Ecological impact  The effect that a man-caused or natural activity has on living organisms and their non-living (abiotic) environment.

Ecological integrity  A living system exhibits integrity if, when subjected to disturbance, it sustains and organizes self-correcting ability to recover toward a biomass end-state that is normal for that system. End-states other than the pristine or naturally whole may be accepted as normal and good.

Ecosystem  The interacting system of a biological community and its non-living environmental surroundings.

Effluent  Wastewater—treated or untreated—that flows out of a treatment plant, sewer, or industrial outfall. Generally refers to wastes discharged into surface waters.
**Emission**  Pollution discharged into the atmosphere from smokestacks, other vents, and surface areas of commercial or industrial facilities; from residential chimneys; and from motor vehicle, locomotive, or aircraft exhausts.

**Environment**  The sum of all external conditions affecting the life, development and survival of an organism.

**Erosion**  The wearing away of the land surface by rain, running water, wind, ice, gravity, or other natural or anthropogenic agents, including such processes as gravitational creep and tillage.

**Estuary**  Region of interaction between rivers and near-shore ocean waters, where tidal action and river flow mix fresh and salt water. Such areas include bays, mouths of rivers, salt marshes, and lagoons. These brackish water ecosystems shelter and feed marine life, birds, and wildlife.

**Eutrophication**  Nutrient enrichment (e.g., nitrogen, phosphorus, and carbon) from sewage effluent, runoff, or atmospheric deposition to surface waters. This process can increase the growth of algae and aquatic plants and ultimately leave water-bodies devoid of most life, impede navigation, and result in aesthetic nuisances.

**Evapotranspiration**  The loss of water from the soil both by evaporation and by transpiration from the plants growing in the soil.

**Fill**  Man-made deposits of natural soils or rock products and waste materials.

**Filter strip**  Strip or area of vegetation used for removing sediment, organic matter, and other pollutants from runoff and wastewater.

**Filtration**  A treatment process, under the control of qualified operators, for removing solid (particulate) matter from water by means of porous media such as sand or a man-made filter; often used to remove particles that contain pathogens.

**First-order stream**  A stream that has no tributaries or branches.

**Floodplain**  Areas adjacent to a stream or river that are subject to flooding or inundation during a storm event that occurs, on average, once every 100 years. The flat or nearly flat land along a river or stream or in a tidal area that is covered by water during a flood.

**Grassed waterway**  Natural or constructed watercourse or outlet that is shaped or graded and established in suitable vegetation for the disposal of runoff water without erosion.
**Gray water**  Domestic wastewater composed of wash water from kitchen, bathroom, and laundry sinks, tubs, and washers.

**Greenspace**  Urban trees, forests, and associated vegetation in and around human settlements, ranging from small communities in rural settings to metropolitan regions.

**Ground cover**  Plants grown to keep soil from eroding.

**Ground water**  The supply of fresh water found beneath the Earth’s surface, usually in aquifers, which supply wells and springs. Because ground water is a major source of drinking water, there is growing concern over contamination from leaching agricultural or industrial pollutants or leaking underground storage tanks.

**Ground-water discharge**  Ground water entering near coastal waters which has been contaminated by landfill leachate, deep well injection of hazardous wastes, septic tanks, etc.

**Habitat**  The place where a plant or animal species naturally lives and grows.

**Hazardous substance**  1. Any material that poses a threat to human health and/or the environment. Typical hazardous substances are toxic, corrosive, ignitable, explosive, or chemically reactive. 2. Any substance designated by EPA to be reported if a designated quantity of the substance is spilled in the waters of the United States or is otherwise released into the environment.

**Hazardous waste**  By-products of society that can pose a substantial or potential hazard to human health or the environment when improperly managed. Possesses at least one of four characteristics (ignitability, corrosivity, reactivity, or toxicity), or appears on special EPA lists.

**Headwater stream**  A term for the smaller first- and second-order tributary streams in a drainage network.

**Heat island effect**  A “dome” of elevated temperatures over an urban area caused by structural and pavement heat fluxes and pollutant emissions.

**Heat islands**  Areas of elevated temperatures in the urban environment caused by structural and pavement heat fluxes and pollutant emissions.

**Holding pond**  A pond or reservoir, usually made of earth, built to store polluted runoff.

**Hydraulic gradient**  In general, the direction of groundwater flow due to changes in the depth of the water table.

**Hydrologic cycle**  Movement or exchange of water between the atmosphere and earth.
**Hydrology**  A science dealing with the properties, distribution, and circulation of water.

**Hypoxia/hypoxic waters**  Waters with dissolved oxygen concentrations of less than 2 ppm, the level generally accepted as the minimum required for most marine life to survive and reproduce.

**Impermeable**  Not easily penetrated. The property of a material or soil that does not allow, or allows only with great difficulty, the movement or passage of water.

**Impervious cover or surface**  A surface that cannot be penetrated by water (i.e., pavement, rock, or a rooftop) and thereby prevents infiltration and generates runoff. Often determined as what is not green at the development site.

**Imperviousness**  The percentage of surface cover that cannot be penetrated by water within a development site or watershed.

**Impoundment**  A body of water or sludge confined by a dam, dike, floodgate, or other barrier.

**Indirect discharge**  Introduction of pollutants from a non-domestic source into a publicly owned waste-treatment system. Indirect dischargers can be commercial or industrial facilities whose wastes enter local sewers.

**Indirect source**  Any facility or building, property, road or parking area that attracts motor vehicle traffic and, indirectly, causes pollution.

**Infiltration**  1. The penetration of water through the ground surface into sub-surface soil or the penetration of water from the soil into sewer or other pipes through defective joints, connections, or manhole walls. 2. The technique of applying large volumes of wastewater to land to penetrate the surface and percolate through the underlying soil.

**Infiltration rate**  The quantity of water that can enter the soil in a specified time interval.

**Inflow**  Entry of extraneous rain water into a sewer system from sources other than infiltration, such as basement drains, manholes, storm drains, and street washing.

**Instream use**  Water use taking place within a stream channel; e.g., hydro-electric power generation, navigation, water quality improvement, fish propagation, recreation.

**Integrated pest management (IPM)**  A mixture of chemical and other, non-pesticide, methods to control pests.

**Integrated waste management**  Using a variety of practices to handle municipal solid waste; can include source reduction, recycling, incineration, and landfilling.
Interception  Amount of rainfall held on tree leaves and stem surfaces.

Intermittent streams  The smallest channels in the stream network that only have running water during a storm event.

Interstate waters  Waters that flow across or form part of state or international boundaries; e.g. the Great Lakes, the Mississippi River, or coastal waters.

Land application  Discharge of wastewater onto the ground for treatment or reuse.

Landscape  The traits, patterns, and structure of a specific geographic area, including its biological composition, its physical environment, and its anthropogenic or social patterns. An area where interacting ecosystems are grouped and repeated in similar form.

Large water system  A water system that services more than 50,000 customers.

Leachate  Water that collects contaminants as it trickles through wastes, pesticides or fertilizers. Leaching may occur in farming areas, feedlots, and landfills, and may result in hazardous substances entering surface water, ground water, or soil.

Leaching  The process by which soluble constituents are dissolved and filtered through the soil by a percolating fluid.

Litter  1. The highly visible portion of solid waste carelessly discarded outside the regular garbage and trash collection and disposal system. 2. Leaves and twigs fallen from forest trees.

Littoral zone  1. That portion of a body of fresh water extending from the shoreline lakeward to the limit of occupancy of rooted plants. 2. A strip of land along the shoreline between the high and low water levels.

Marsh  A type of wetland that does not accumulate appreciable peat deposits and is dominated by herbaceous vegetation. Marshes may be either fresh or saltwater, tidal or non-tidal.

Medium-size water system  A water system that serves 3,300 to 50,000 customers.

Mitigation  Measures taken to reduce adverse impacts on the environment.

Morphology  The form and structure of an organism or one of its parts, can also refer to water bodies such as streams, rivers, and lakes.

Mulching  The placement of grass, wood chips,
straw, or synthetic material on the soil to prevent erosion, slow weed growth, prevent soil packing, and maintain cooler and warmer soil temperatures depending on season.

**Municipal discharge** Discharge of effluent from wastewater treatment plants which receive wastewater from households, commercial establishments, and industries in the coastal drainage basin. Combined sewer/separate storm overflows are included in this category.

**Municipal sewage** Wastes (mostly liquid) originating from a community; may be composed of domestic wastewaters and/or industrial discharges.

**Municipal sludge** Semi-liquid residue remaining from the treatment of municipal water and wastewater.

**Municipal solid waste** Common garbage or trash generated by industries, businesses, institutions, and homes.

**Navigable waters** Traditionally, waters sufficiently deep and wide for navigation by all, or specified vessels; such waters in the United States come under federal jurisdiction and are protected by certain provisions of the Clean Water Act.

**Nitrate** A compound containing nitrogen that can exist in the atmosphere or as a dissolved gas in water and which can have harmful effects on humans and animals. Nitrates in water can cause severe illness in infants and domestic animals. A plant nutrient and inorganic fertilizer, nitrate is found in septic systems, animal feed lots, agricultural fertilizers, manure, industrial wastewaters, sanitary landfills, and garbage dumps.

**Non-community water system** A public water system that is not a community water system; e.g. the water supply at a camp site or national park.

**Non-conventional pollutant** Any pollutant not statutorily listed or which is poorly understood by the scientific community.

**Non-Point Source (NPS) pollution** Pollution which is: (1) induced by natural processes, including precipitation, seepage, percolation, and runoff; (2) not traceable to any discrete or identifiable facility; and (3) controllable through the utilization of wise management practices or pollution that arises from an ill-defined and diffuse source, such as runoff from cultivated fields, agricultural lands, urban areas, or forest or wildland.

**National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)** A provision of the Clean Water Act which prohibits discharge of pollutants into waters of the United States unless a special permit is issued by EPA, a state, or, where delegated, a tribal government on an Indian reservation.
Non-potable  Water that is unsafe or unpalatable to drink because it contains pollutants, contaminants, minerals, or infective agents.

Nutrient  Any substance assimilated by living things that promotes growth. The term is generally applied to nitrogen and phosphorus in wastewater, but is also applied to other essential and trace elements.

Nutrient pollution  Contamination of water resources by excessive inputs of nutrients. In surface waters, excess algal production is a major concern.

Offstream use  Water withdrawn from surface or groundwater sources for use at another place.

Organic matter  Carbon-containing materials that influence the amount of water and nutrients held by the soil. High organic soils have better structure and retain nutrients and water better than medium organic soils. Low organic soils may be improved by the addition of organic materials such as compost.

Overflow rate  One of the guidelines for design of the settling tanks and clarifiers in a treatment plant; used by plant operators to determine if tanks and clarifiers are over or under-used.

Overland flow  A land application technique that cleanses wastewater by allowing it to flow over a sloped surface. As the water flows over the surface, contaminants are absorbed and the water is collected at the bottom of the slope for reuse or water that runs across the land surface after rainfall, either before it enters a watercourse or after it overflows a watercourse.

Palatable water  Water, at a desirable temperature, that is free from objectionable tastes, odors, colors, and turbidity.

Palustrine wetland  Any inland wetland which lacks flowing water and contains ocean-derived salts in concentrations of less than 0.05%.

Particulate loading  The mass of particulates per unit volume of air or water.

Particulate matter ($PM_{10}$)  A major class of air pollutants consisting of tiny solid or liquid particles of soot, dust, smoke, fumes, and mists. The size of the particles (10 microns or smaller, about 0.0004 inches or less) allows them to enter the air sacs (gas exchange region) deep in the lungs where they may get deposited and result in adverse health effects. $PM_{10}$ also causes visibility reduction.

Particulates  1. Fine liquid or solid particles such as dust, smoke, mist, fumes, or smog,
found in air or emissions. 2. Very small solids suspended in water; they can vary in size, shape, density and electrical charge and can be gathered together by coagulation and flocculation.

**Parts Per Billion (ppb)/Parts Per Million (ppm)** Units commonly used to express contamination ratios, as in establishing the maximum permissible amount of a contaminant in water, land, or air.

**Peak flow** The maximum rate of runoff at a given point or from a given area, during a specific period.

**Percolation** 1. The movement of water downward and radially through subsurface soil layers, usually continuing downward to ground water. Can also involve upward movement of water. 2. Slow seepage of water through a filter.

**Perennial streams** A stream channel that has running water throughout the year.

**Permanent seeding** The use of perennial grasses, with trees and shrubs, to stabilize the soil.

**Pervious cover** A vegetated area of the urban landscape where rainfall is intercepted by vegetation, and infiltrates into soil or a humus layer.

**pH** An expression of the intensity of the basic or acid condition of a liquid; may range from 0 to 14, where 0 is the most acid and 7 is neutral. Natural waters usually have a pH between 6.5 and 8.5.

**Point source** A stationary location or fixed facility from which pollutants are discharged; any single identifiable source of pollution; e.g. a pipe, ditch, ship, ore pit, factory smokestack.

**Pollutant** Generally, any substance introduced into the environment that adversely affects the usefulness of a resource or the health of humans, animals, or ecosystems.

**Pollutant load** Total concentrations of point and non-source pollution contained within a given amount of water.

**Porosity** Degree to which soil, gravel, sediment, or rock is permeated with pores or cavities through which water or air can move.

**Potable water** Water that is safe for drinking and cooking.

**Protected root zone** The optimum space needed for a group of trees or an individual tree to retain good health and vigor.

**Public water system** A system that provides piped water for human consumption to at least 15 service connections or regularly serves 25 individuals.
Glossary

R

Radiation loading The accumulation of radioactive materials in the atmosphere.

Rain garden A strategically located low area planted with native vegetation that intercepts runoff.

Raw sewage Untreated wastewater and its contents.

Raw water Intake water prior to any treatment or use.

Receiving waters A river, lake, ocean, stream or other watercourse into which wastewater or treated effluent is discharged.

Recharge The process by which water is added to a zone of saturation, usually by percolation from the soil surface; e.g., the recharge of an aquifer.

Recharge area A land area in which water reaches the zone of saturation from surface infiltration, e.g., where rainwater soaks through the earth to reach an aquifer.

Recharge rate The quantity of water per unit of time that replenishes or refills an aquifer.

Reservoir Any natural or artificial holding area used to store, regulate, or control water.

Restoration Measures taken to return a site to pre-violation conditions.

Retrofit Addition of a pollution control device on an existing facility without making major changes to the generating plant. Also called backfit.

Riparian Of or related to or living or located on the bank of a watercourse.

Riparian habitat Areas adjacent to rivers and streams with a differing density, diversity, and productivity of plant and animal species relative to nearby uplands.

Riparian rights Entitlement of a land owner to certain uses of water on or bordering the property, including the right to prevent diversion or misuse of upstream waters. Generally a matter of state law.

River basin The land area drained by a river and its tributaries.

Runoff That part of precipitation that flows toward the streams on the ground surface or within the ground. Runoff is composed of baseflow and surface runoff.

S

Safe water Water that does not contain harmful bacteria, toxic materials, or chemicals, and is
considered safe for drinking even if it may have taste, odor, color, and certain mineral problems.

**Sand filters** Devices that remove some suspended solids from sewage. Air and bacteria decompose additional wastes filtering through the sand so that cleaner water drains from the bed.

**Sanitary sewers** Underground pipes that carry off only domestic or industrial waste, not stormwater.

**Second-order stream** Formed when two streams with no tributaries or branches combine.

**Sediment** Solid material, both mineral and organic, that is in suspension and being transported from its site of origin by the forces of air, water, gravity, or ice or oil, sand, and minerals washed from land into water, usually after rain. They pile up in reservoirs, rivers and harbors, destroying fish and wildlife habitat, and clouding the water so that sunlight cannot reach aquatic plants. Careless farming, mining, and building activities will expose sediment materials, allowing them to wash off the land after rainfall.

**Sheetflow** A flow condition during a storm where stormwater runoff is very shallow in depth and spread uniformly over the land surface. This sheet flow quickly changes into concentrated channel flow within several hundred feet.

**Soil pH** Soil pH affects the availability of nutrients and, when interpreted with texture and organic matter, indicates the limestone needs of the soil. The results are expressed in pH units, with pH 7.0 being neutral. Connecticut soils are generally somewhat acidic in the pH range of 4.5 to 6.5. Most plants except for rhododendrons, azaleas, mountain laurel and blueberries grow best at a soil pH between 6.0 and 7.0.

**Soil moisture storage capacity** Water content of a soil at a derived time after its complete wetting and after free drainage has become negligible.

**Soil texture** Texture influences the amount of water and nutrients a soil can hold. Sands, loamy sands, and sandy soils require more frequent watering and lose nutrients more readily by leaching than do fine sandy loams and loams. Silt loams, silty clay loams, and clay loams may retain excessive moisture and reduce aeration of plant roots.

**Steep slope** An area of a development site that is too steep to: (a) safely build on or (b) has a high potential for severe soil erosion during construction.

**Storm sewer** A system of pipes (separate from sanitary sewers) that carries water runoff from buildings and land surfaces.

**Stormwater discharge** Precipitation that does
not infiltrate into the ground or evaporate due to impervious land surfaces but instead flows onto adjacent land or water areas and is routed into drain/sewer systems.

**Stormwater mitigation** A descriptive term for the application of one or many technological or biological practices to address and minimize flooding from storm events.

**Stream buffer** A variable width area of vegetation located along both sides of the stream.

**Streamflow** Water discharge that occurs in a natural channel.

**Stream order** A classification system for streams based on stream hierarchy; the smaller the stream, the lower its numerical classification. For example, a first-order stream does not have tributaries and normally originates from springs and/or seeps.

**Sub-basin** A term for a large watershed management unit (100 to 1,000 square miles) that combines the drainage area from a number of watersheds together, usually draining to a specific receiving water such as a lake, estuary, or river.

**Subwatershed** A watershed management unit whose boundaries are typically defined as all of the land draining to the point where two second-order streams combine together to form a third-order stream. A subwatershed may be a few square miles in area, and is the key geographic unit for urban stream classification and watershed-based zoning.

**Surface impoundment** Treatment, storage, or disposal of liquid hazardous wastes in ponds.

**Surface runoff** Precipitation, snow melt, or irrigation water in excess of what can infiltrate the soil surface and be stored in small surface depressions; a major transporter of non-point source pollutants in rivers, streams, and lakes.

**Surface water** All water naturally open to the atmosphere (rivers, lakes, reservoirs, ponds, streams, impoundments, seas, estuaries, etc).

**Suspended loads** Specific sediment particles maintained in the water column by turbulence and carried with the flow of water.

**Suspended solids** Small particles of solid pollutants that float on the surface of, or are suspended in, sewage or other liquids. They resist removal by conventional means.

**Swamp** A type of wetland dominated by woody vegetation but without appreciable peat deposits. Swamps may be fresh or salt water and tidal or non-tidal.

**Thermal pollution** Discharge of heated water from industrial processes that can kill or injure
aquatic organisms.

**Tidal marsh**  Low, flat marshlands traversed by channels and tidal hollows, subject to tidal inundation; normally, the only vegetation present is salt-tolerant bushes and grasses.

**Third-order stream**  Third-order streams are formed when two second-order streams combine together.

**Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)**  All material that passes the standard glass river filter; now called total filterable residue. Term is used to reflect salinity.

**Total Suspended Particles (TSP)**  A method of monitoring airborne particulate matter by total weight.

**Total Suspended Solids (TSS)**  A measure of the suspended solids in wastewater, effluent, or water bodies, determined by tests for “total suspended non-filterable solids”.

**Transpiration**  The process by which water vapor is lost to the atmosphere from living plants. The term can also be applied to the quantity of water thus dissipated.

**Tree or Canopy cover**  The percent of a fixed area covered by the crown of an individual tree or delimited by the vertical projection of its outermost perimeter; small openings in the crown are included. Used to express the relative importance of individual species within a vegetation community or to express the coverage of woody species.

**Turfgrass**  Any grass species grown as a solid mat of vegetation; often used for sod in home lawns and golf courses.

**Urban runoff**  Stormwater from city streets and adjacent domestic or commercial properties that carries pollutants of various kinds into the sewer systems and receiving waters.

**V**

**Variance**  Waivers granted to existing property owners if the owner can demonstrate severe economic hardship or unique circumstances that make it impossible to meet some or all of the development (e.g., buffers) requirements.

**Vegetative buffer zones**  Undisturbed or planted vegetated areas that surround a development, land disturbance activity, or border an intermittent stream or permanent water body.

**Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs)**  Hydrocarbon compounds that exist in the ambient
air. VOCs contribute to the formation of smog and/or are toxic. VOCs often have an odor. Some examples of VOCs are gasoline, alcohol, and solvents used in paints.

**Wastewater** The spent or used water from a home, community, farm, or industry that contains dissolved or suspended matter.

**Water pollution** The presence in water of enough harmful or objectionable material to damage the water’s quality.

**Water quality criteria** Levels of water quality expected to render a body of water suitable for its designated use. Criteria are based on specific levels of pollutants that would make the water harmful if used for drinking, swimming, farming, fish production, or industrial processes.

**Water quality standards** State-adopted and EPA-approved ambient standards for water bodies. The standards prescribe the use of the water body and establish the water quality criteria that must be met to protect designated uses.

**Water table** The level of groundwater.

**Watershed** The land area that drains into a stream; the watershed for a major river may encompass a number of smaller watersheds that ultimately combine at a common point.

**Watershed area** A topographic area within a line drawn connecting the highest points uphill of a drinking water intake into which overland flow drains.

**Watershed-based zoning** An alternative zoning technique, whereby the intensity of development within a watershed or subwatershed is at least partially based on the ultimate percentage of impervious cover, and the desired level of stream protection.

**Wetlands** An area that is saturated by surface or ground water with vegetation adapted for life under those soil conditions, as swamps, bogs, fens, marshes, and estuaries.

**Windthrow** The uprooting and felling of trees by strong gusts of wind. Also, patches of trees that have been so felled.
Appendix A – Costs of Urban and Community Forestry Management

Table A-1. Mississippi Main Street Association statistical highlights for member communities (2003).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Start Date</th>
<th>Businesses Created</th>
<th>Businesses Expanded</th>
<th>Buildings Improved</th>
<th>Jobs Created</th>
<th>Private Dollars Invested</th>
<th>Public Dollars Invested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aberdeen</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>$10,259,162</td>
<td>$7,817,716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batesville</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>$92,093</td>
<td>$136,076</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bay St. Louis</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td>$830,011</td>
<td>$1,174,894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biloxi</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>4,615</td>
<td>$664,068,450</td>
<td>$2,510,100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booneville</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>$412,550</td>
<td>$139,975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canton</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>488</td>
<td>$11,796,384</td>
<td>$8,282,980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleveland</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>$6,828,550</td>
<td>$1,445,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbia</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>$626,030</td>
<td>$133,470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbus</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>669</td>
<td>$22,689,213</td>
<td>$3,982,347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corinth</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>$11,273,742</td>
<td>$900,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Lo/Mendenhall</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>$40,600</td>
<td>$16,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fondren/Jackson</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>$16,136,000</td>
<td>$200,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenville</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>869</td>
<td>$45,495,732</td>
<td>$6,708,244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenwood</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>$36,400,000</td>
<td>$2,200,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table A-1. Mississippi Main Street Association statistical highlights for member communities (2003) (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Start Date</th>
<th>Businesses Created</th>
<th>Businesses Expanded</th>
<th>Buildings Improved</th>
<th>Jobs Created</th>
<th>Private Dollars Invested</th>
<th>Public Dollars Invested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grenada</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>$2,753,720</td>
<td>$401,870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hattiesburg</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>$13,089,350</td>
<td>$14,033,163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hernando</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>$14,060,050</td>
<td>$8,178,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kosciusko</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>$5,557,322</td>
<td>$514,672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leland</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>$123,000</td>
<td>$22,942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lexington</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>$104,785</td>
<td>$25,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Beach</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>$12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magee</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>$785,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McComb</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>$2,206,200</td>
<td>$1,282,404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meridian</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>2,635</td>
<td>$65,038,848</td>
<td>$4,693,598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natchez</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>$2,336,790</td>
<td>$827,083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Albany</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>$2,172,540</td>
<td>$742,857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean Springs</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>386</td>
<td>$66,774,868</td>
<td>$3,124,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Okolona</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>$170,015</td>
<td>$143,236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olive Branch</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>$212,200</td>
<td>$78,928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pascagoula</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
<td>$600</td>
<td>$23,319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philadelphia</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>$1,150,054</td>
<td>$74,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picayune</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>$1,736,998</td>
<td>$65,490</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table A-1. Mississippi Main Street Association statistical highlights for member communities (2003) (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Start Date</th>
<th>Businesses Created</th>
<th>Businesses Expanded</th>
<th>Buildings Improved</th>
<th>Jobs Created</th>
<th>Private Dollars Invested</th>
<th>Public Dollars Invested</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Port Gibson</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>$1,068,200</td>
<td>$3,659,045</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ripley</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>$4,301,900</td>
<td>$734,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senatobia</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>$471,400</td>
<td>$4,477,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southaven</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>227</td>
<td>$1,436,481</td>
<td>$2,636,601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunica</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>$1,675,000</td>
<td>$5,419,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tupelo</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>677</td>
<td>$53,798,974</td>
<td>$41,599,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vicksburg</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2,424</td>
<td>$54,031,325</td>
<td>$4,516,760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Point</td>
<td>1984</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td>101</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>$46,254,954</td>
<td>$7,106,520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazoo City</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>49</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>$1,094,000</td>
<td>$8,085,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS</td>
<td>2409</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>1384</td>
<td>16,839</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1,169,403,091</td>
<td>$148,125,566</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B – Effective Urban and Community Forestry Management

Table B-1. Maps and data sets used for the CRI.

Natural Resource Inventory

1. Base Map
   a. Study map boundary—site, town, watershed region.
   b. Orientation elements—major roads, water bodies.
   c. USGS quadrangle maps.
   d. Aerials (Digital Orthophoto Quads—DOQs).

2. Land Cover—a single data layer with much information associated.

3. Soils—another single data layer with lots of info attached including wetland and prime agricultural soils.

4. Water Resources
   a. Watershed boundaries (major, regional, and local).
   b. Public supply areas.
   c. Surface water.
   d. Wells.
   e. Water quality.

5. Unique and Fragile Resources
   a. Natural diversity database.
   b. Swamps, marshes, prairies and other rare ecosystems.
   c. Other important information that may be available locally such as endangered plant and animal communities.

6. Committed Open Space—a single data layer that includes state, municipal, and private lands. This information should be supplemented with local information.

Social Resource Inventory

1. Community Infrastructure
   a. Roads.
   b. Railroads.
   c. Airports.
Table B-1. Maps and data sets used for the CRI (continued).

d. Sewer Service Areas.
e. Other important information that may be available locally include: parcels, community facilities, utility lines.

2. Regulated Lands
   a. Floodplains (from FEMA).
   b. Wetlands (derived from soils data).
   c. Zoning (available from your town planning department).

3. Cultural Resources
   a. Scenic Areas.
   b. Recreation Resources.
   c. Archeological Sites.
   d. Historical Resources.

Economic Resource Inventory
1. Population Characteristics
2. Physical/Natural Areas
3. Institutional Resources
4. Capital Resources

Table B-2. Tree inventory description and decision guide.

What is a tree inventory?

A tree inventory is the gathering of accurate information on the health and diversity of the community forest. How many street trees are there? What kind? In what condition are they? You cannot manage the community forest effectively unless you know its condition. Tree inventories are an essential tool of good management.

Why should my community do a tree inventory?

There are many good reasons for doing a tree inventory in your community. The inventory may be used to:

- Determine the need for a community forestry program. For example, if the inventory reveals many dead and diseased trees (that could cost the community in liability damages) or areas that are bare of trees, this suggests that
Table B-2. Tree inventory description and decision guide (continued).

- A program incorporating tree planting is badly needed.
- Prioritize maintenance schedules to reduce the potential liability that results from hazardous trees. It also streamlines the efficiency of street crews and facilitates long-term budgeting.
- Educate residents about the benefits of a healthy, well-managed community forest, and to inform them about species best suited to the community.
- Facilitate the planning that is essential to the community’s quality of life.
- Provide the basis for the development of a comprehensive community forestry management plan.

What information should be collected during an inventory?

- Only data that will be put to use should be collected. Your community must determine what objectives it wishes to achieve prior to conducting an inventory. Bear in mind that information translates into expense: the more data gathered on each tree, the greater the cost of the inventory. Generally however, information on the following is collected:
  - Tree species: To avoid costly mistakes, record the scientific names of trees. Common names or codes can also be included, if desired, but care should be taken to maintain consistency.
  - Tree size: DBH (diameter at breast height—4.5 feet above ground), height, and crown spread.
  - Condition: Indicate what maintenance procedure is needed. Does the tree need corrective pruning? Does it require removal? It is important to note that if the tree is deemed to be a hazard to the public and removal is mandatory, rather than record “hazardous,” it is prudent to record “removal.”
  - Damage: Record insect infestations, injuries and diseases by indicating the precise procedure necessary. For example, rather than describe lightning damage, indicate the need for pruning or removal. It is prudent to have a skilled tree crew correct the problem as soon as possible.
  - Management/maintenance: Record need to fertilize, apply fungicides/insecticides, prune, repair curbs and/or sidewalk damage inflicted by roots, remove stump/tree, or plant in an empty planting site. Do so in order to schedule maintenance work, allocate equipment, and prepare budgets.
  - Site characteristics: How much space is available for the root system? What is the condition and health of the soil in the planting space? The proximity of overhead/underground utilities and tall buildings? The potential for road salt/traffic damage? Is it zoned commercial?
Table B-2. Tree inventory description and decision guide (continued).

- Planting spaces: Research suggests that a community should give highest priority to planting trees on streets where yard trees are few. Identify planting spaces to encourage the planting of bare areas.
- Historic/Distinctive Trees and Groves: Special trees require more intensive management. (Note: Trees of this nature may also serve to justify the inventory itself if the community is hesitant to undertake a management program).

What type of inventory should my community do?

There are many different types of inventories and you should select an inventory type only when you know precisely what you want to accomplish. Data gathered on your community’s trees must have practical value. To guarantee that your tree management program will be effective today and useful tomorrow, you must match an appropriate inventory to your objectives. The most common types include:
- Specific Problem Inventory: Gathers data about a specific problem or condition for work contracts or work schedules. For example, a survey of hazard trees or the extent of Dutch elm disease are specific problem inventories. Note that every community should conduct a yearly survey of hazardous trees. (Marking hazardous trees is not recommended since doing so may increase liability.)
- Partial Inventory: Gathers data from a sample (or samples) and information is extrapolated to apply to the whole forest. Survey is easily completed by one or more observers with data recorders walking or driving in as little as 4 weeks, depending on the scope of the inventory (i.e., street trees or entire watershed).
- Complete Inventory: Surveys the entire tree population but it is time consuming and expensive.
- Cover-type Survey: Information is gathered by at least partial use of aerial photographs and sometimes with a geographical information system. This type of survey is used increasingly in urban areas to examine the entire tree population to plan long-term land use. It is especially useful in intensively managed areas such as parks and campuses, but it can be expensive and produces detail that few community tree management programs can use effectively.

How should the inventory be done?

The tree inventory may be done by professionals or volunteers, but, in either case, all crews, regardless of experience, require training before and during the inventory. (Note: It is advisable that the municipal tree warden or
Table B-2. Tree inventory description and decision guide (continued).

another qualified professional assist or lead the tree inventory process. It is also advisable that a person trained in hazard tree assessment review all trees surveyed and assess them for hazardous condition).

Individuals working alone tend to be more productive, but crews attract attention, and this fact may be exploited to good advantage: professionals who carry brochures about the tree management program and the inventory or questionnaires about willingness to fund tree management programs can educate community residents. Crews should wear uniforms, if possible, and carry identification cards as well as the tree warden or other qualified professional’s phone number. Where crime is a problem, two or more people must work together for safety.

When should the inventory be done?

Summer months are more conducive to partial inventories, due to heat and humidity, and students are often available to help. Favorable weather in the fall and spring makes inventory work more pleasant and allows more area to be inventoried. On the other hand, winter conditions allow crews to observe trees for hazardous limbs and dead wood. Professional foresters often choose to conduct inventories in the winter, unless crown cover is being recorded.

How should the inventory be updated?

Tree populations undergo constant change, and, as an inventory ages, it becomes less accurate and useful. No inventory will provide information that is useful beyond five or 10 years. However, any inventory data can be useful because it provides a baseline and incentive for initiating a community tree management program. Consider the damage a single storm can do. Hurricane winds can render an inventory obsolete overnight. The ideal way to keep the inventory current is to make use of specially designed computer programs that provide easy and logical locations for data entry specific to tree inventories. Good programs also allow you to easily query data and produce reports, graphs, and tables and perform statistical analyses.

Hazardous trees

Stress conditions exist in the community forest severely affecting the health of individual trees. Trees that pose a hazard to public safety need to be detected and treated by removal or pruning as soon as possible. It is prudent that the municipal tree warden frequently assess trees for hazardous conditions.
### Table B-3. Tree management cost worksheet for urban and community trees.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tree Management Activity</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tree Conservation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Planning</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Inventory, Mapping, and Evaluation</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tree Protection</strong>^1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Planning</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establishing the Tree Protection Zone</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fencing</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fence Posts</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signage</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worker Education</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspection and Monitoring</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre- and Post-Construction Maintenance</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tree Establishment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Selection</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Selection</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Purchase and Planting</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulch</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Trunk Protectors</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table B-3. Tree management cost worksheet for urban and community trees (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tree Establishment (continued)</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Root Barriers</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural Soil</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Tree Maintenance$^{2,3}$</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mulch</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruning</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watering (5 times/mo for 3 months)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Established Tree Maintenance$^4$</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mulch (annually)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspection (every 1 to 5 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruning (every 3 to 5 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hazardous Tree Removal</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soil Sampling</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(prior to fertilization)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fertilization (as necessary)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical Mulching</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(as necessary)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irrigation (during droughts)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pest Management (as necessary)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabling/Bracing (as necessary)</td>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table B-3. Tree management cost worksheet for urban and community trees (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional (continued)</th>
<th># Units</th>
<th>Unit Cost</th>
<th>Total Cost</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lightning Protection (as necessary)</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root Barriers (as necessary)</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Tree Removal (at end of service life)</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Additional tree protection materials may be required, such as root padding, trunk wraps, or additional fencing, posts, and signs.
2. Annual maintenance for new trees during the first 3 years after planting.
3. Inspect while trees are being mulched, pruned, and watered.
4. Routine and periodic maintenance for established trees.

Table B-4. Long-term cost saving strategies for urban and community forests.

1. Provide and maintain adequate growing space for trees.
2. Select good quality trees.
3. Plant trees correctly.
4. Water newly planted trees during the establishment period, the first 3 years after planting.
5. Mulch new and established trees annually.
6. Use leaf litter and wood chip mulch available for free from municipal or private sources.
7. Prune new trees early to develop a strong, healthy branch structure.
8. Prune established trees properly and regularly to maintain a safe and healthy condition.
9. Top trees only as a last resort (e.g., mistletoe infestation), or as a growth management tool.
10. Maintain soil and root health to maintain tree health.
11. Protect a tree’s roots, trunk, and crown daily throughout its life.
12. Actively protect trees on building construction and utility installation and repair sites.
Table B-5. Example goals and ordinance provisions for urban and community forest programs.

Goal 1. Establish and maintain maximum tree cover

Ordinance provisions:

a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
b. Develop a comprehensive management plan.
c. Resolution of conflicts between trees and structures.
d. Planting requirements.
e. Permit required for activities that may damage city owned trees.
f. Permit required for activities that may damage protected private trees.
g. Conservation of forest and woodland resources during development.

Goal 2. Maintain trees in a healthy condition through good cultural practices.

Ordinance provisions:

a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
b. Develop a comprehensive management plan.
c. Resolution of conflicts between trees and structures.
d. Help for citizens performing tree maintenance.
e. Topping prohibited.
f. Planting requirements.
g. Harming public trees forbidden.
h. Situations which are declared to be public nuisances.
i. Abatement of hazards and public nuisances.
j. Licensing of private tree care firms.
k. Permit required for activities that may damage city owned trees.
l. Permit required for activities that may damage protected private trees.
m. Conservation of forest and woodland resources during development.
Table B-5. Example goals and ordinance provisions for urban and community forest programs (continued).

**Goal 3. Establish and maintain an optimal level of age and species diversity.**

Ordinance provisions:

- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Develop a comprehensive management plan.
- c. Planting requirements.
- d. Conservation of forest and woodland resources during development.

**Goal 4. Promote conservation of tree resources.**

Ordinance provisions:

- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Develop a comprehensive management plan.
- c. Resolution of conflicts between trees and structures.
- d. Planting requirements.
- e. Permit required for activities that may damage city owned trees.
- f. Permit required for activities that may damage protected private trees.
- g. Conservation of forest and woodland resources during development.

**Goal 5. Select, situate, and maintain street trees appropriately to maximize benefits.**

Ordinance provisions:

- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Develop a comprehensive management plan.
- c. Responsibilities of property owners.
- d. Permit required for planting trees in the public right-of-way.
- e. Planting requirements.
- f. Permit required for activities that may damage city owned trees.
Table B-5. Example goals and ordinance provisions for urban and community forest programs (continued).

Goal 6. Centralize tree management under a person or persons with the necessary experience.

Ordinance provisions:
- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Establish a tree board or commission.
- c. Specify cooperation between departments and agencies.
- d. Develop a comprehensive management plan.

Goal 7. Promote efficient and cost-effective management of the urban forest.

Ordinance provisions:
- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Specify cooperation between departments and agencies.
- c. Develop a comprehensive management plan.

Goal 8. Foster community support for the local urban forestry program and encourage good tree management on privately-owned properties.

Ordinance provisions:
- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Establish a tree board or commission with tree warden.

Goal 9. Facilitate the resolution of tree-related conflicts between citizens with tree board.

Ordinance provisions:
- a. Designate administrative responsibilities.
- b. Procedures to be followed in resolving tree disputes.
- c. Standards for resolution of tree disputes.
- d. Apportionment of tree dispute resolution costs.
- e. Recording for notification of future owners.
- f. Enforcement of tree dispute resolutions.
Table B-6. Methods to monitor the effectiveness of urban and community forest programs*.

1. **Sampling from populations.** In many cases, it will be more efficient to evaluate a sample population under study (i.e., trees, parking lots, homeowners) than to evaluate an entire population.

2. **Photogrammetry and remote sensing techniques.** Using stock aerial photographs or other aerial imagery, photogrammetric techniques can be used to assess tree canopy cover quickly and cost-effectively.

3. **Ground survey.** For many applications, the ground survey is still the simplest and most accurate means for collecting detailed data on the urban forest.

4. **Photo points.** Photographs taken from the ground or the air can provide graphic and obvious evidence of changes in tree condition and cover.

5. **Record keeping and analysis.** Well-maintained records and databases can be analyzed to provide a wealth of information on ordinance performance.

6. **Public polling.** The public is an integral part of the urban forest ecosystem.

*In-depth descriptions of each method are available at: www.isa-arbor.com/publications/ordinance.aspx
Appendix C – Urban and Community Stream Protection Strategies

Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers.

Buffer Model Ordinance

This ordinance focuses primarily on stream buffers. Communities creating coastal buffers may wish to incorporate additional features. For an example of a coastal buffer ordinance, see the Rhode Island Ordinance at www.stormwatercenter.net/Model%20Ordinances/rhode_island_buffer_ordinance.htm

Section I. Background

Whereas, buffers adjacent to stream systems and coastal areas provide numerous environmental protection and resource management benefits which can include:

a) restoring and maintaining the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the water resources,
b) removing pollutants delivered in urban stormwater,
c) reducing erosion and controlling sedimentation,
d) stabilizing stream banks,
e) providing infiltration of stormwater runoff,
f) maintaining base flow of streams,
g) contributing organic matter that is a source of food and energy for an aquatic ecosystem,
h) providing tree canopy to shade streams and promote desirable aquatic organisms,

This benefit applies primarily to forested buffer systems. In some communities, such as in prairie settings, the native vegetation may not be forest. See an example ordinance from Napa, California at www.stormwatercenter.net/Model%20Ordinances/napa_buffer_ordinance.htm) providing riparian wildlife habitat, and

j) furnishing scenic value and recreational opportunity.

It is the desire of the (Natural Resources or Planning Agency) to protect and maintain native vegetation in riparian and wetland areas by implementing specifications for the establishment, protection, and maintenance of vegetation along all stream systems and/or coastal zones within our jurisdictional authority.
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

Section II. Intent
The purpose of this ordinance is to establish minimal acceptable requirements for the design of buffers to protect streams, wetlands and floodplains of (Jurisdiction); water quality of watercourses, reservoirs, lakes, and other significant water resources within (Jurisdiction); (Jurisdiction’s) riparian and aquatic ecosystems; and to provide for environmentally sound use of (Jurisdiction’s) land resources.

Section III. Definitions
Active Channel: The area of the stream channel subject to frequent flows (approximately once per one and a half years), and includes the portion of the channel below where the floodplain flattens.

Best Management Practices (BMPs): Conservation practices or management measures which control soil loss and reduce water quality degradation caused by nutrients, animal wastes, toxins, sediment, and runoff.

Buffer: A vegetated area, including trees, shrubs and herbaceous vegetation, which exists or is established to protect a stream system, lake, reservoir, or coastal estuarine area. Alteration of this natural area is strictly limited.

Development: 1) The improvement of property for any purpose involving building; 2) Subdivision, or the division of a tract or parcel of land into 2 or more parcels; 3) the combination of any 2 or more lots, tracts, or parcels of property for any purpose; 4) the preparation of land for any of the above purposes.

Non-Tidal Wetland: Those areas not influenced by tidal fluctuations that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions.

The definition of “non-tidal wetland” is adapted from the definition of “wetland” used by the USEPA and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Other definitions will also be acceptable. See the Croton-on-Hudson Wetlands and Watercourses ordinance for an example.

Nonpoint Source Pollution: Pollution which is generated by various land use activities rather than from an identifiable or discrete source, and is conveyed to waterways through natural processes, such as rainfall, storm runoff, or ground water seepage rather than direct discharge.

One Hundred Year Floodplain: The area of land adjacent to a stream subject to inundation during a storm event that has a recurrence interval of one hundred (100) years.

Pollution: Any contamination or alteration of the physical, chemical, or biological properties of any
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

waters that will render the waters harmful or detrimental to: public health, safety, or welfare; domestic, commercial, industrial, agricultural, recreational, or other legitimate beneficial uses; livestock, wild animals, or birds; and fish or other aquatic life.

Stream Channel: Part of a water course either naturally or artificially created which contains an intermittent or perennial base flow of groundwater origin. Base flows of groundwater origin can be distinguished by any of the following physical indicators:

1) hydrophytic vegetation, hydric soil, or other hydrologic indicators in the area(s) where groundwater, enters the stream channel, in the vicinity of the stream headwaters, channel bed or channel banks
2) flowing water not directly related to a storm event, and
3) historical records of a local high groundwater table, such as well and stream gauge records.

Stream Order: A classification system for streams based on stream hierarchy. The smaller the stream, the lower its numerical classification. For example, a first-order stream does not have tributaries and normally originates from springs and/or seeps. At the confluence of two first-order streams, a second-order stream begins, and so on. (See Figure 1)

Stream System: A stream channel together with one or both of the following:

1) 100-year floodplain and/or
2) hydrologically-related non-tidal wetlands.

Streams: Perennial and intermittent watercourses identified through site inspection and USGS maps.
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

Perennial streams are those which are depicted on a USGS map with a solid blue line. Intermittent streams are those which are depicted on a USGS map with a dotted blue line. Defining the term “stream” is perhaps the most contentious issue in the definition of stream buffers. This term determines the origin, and the length of the stream buffer. While some jurisdictions restrict the buffer to perennial or “blue line” streams, others include both perennial and intermittent streams in the stream buffer program. Some communities do not rely on USGS maps, and instead prepare local maps of all stream systems that require a buffer.

Water Pollution Hazard: A land use or activity that causes a relatively high risk of potential water pollution.

Section IV. Applications
A) This ordinance shall apply to all proposed development except for that development which meets waiver or variance criteria as outlined in Section IX of this regulation.

B) This ordinance shall apply to all timber harvesting activities, except those timber harvesting operations which are implementing a forest management plan which has been deemed to be in compliance with regulations of the buffer ordinance and has received approval from (state forestry agency).

C) This ordinance shall apply to all surface mining operations except that the design standards shall not apply to active surface mining operations which are operating in compliance with an approved (state or federal agency) surface mining permit.

D) The ordinance shall not apply to agricultural operations covered by an approved NRCS conservation plan that includes the application of best management practices. Communities should carefully consider whether or not to exempt agricultural operations from the buffer ordinance, because buffer regulations may take land out of production and impose a financial burden on family farms. Many communities exempt agricultural operations if they have an approved NRCS conservation plan. In some regions, agricultural buffers may be funded through the Conservation Reserve Program (CRP). Consult the Conservation Technology Information Center (CTIC) at www.ctic.perdue.edu.

Livestock operations near and around streams may be regulated by communities. Livestock can significantly degrade the stream system and accelerate streambank erosion. The King County Livestock Management Ordinance is one example of a local livestock ordinance. For more information,
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

contact the King County Department of Development and Environmental Services at (206) 296-6602.

E) Except as provided in Section IX, this ordinance shall apply to all parcels of land, structures, and activities which are causing or contributing to:
   1) pollution, including non-point pollution, of the waters of the jurisdiction adopting this ordinance,
   2) erosion or sedimentation of stream channels, and
   3) degradation of aquatic or riparian habitat.

Section V. Plan Requirements
A) In accordance with Section IV of this ordinance, a plan approved by the appropriate agency is required for all development, forest harvesting operations, surface mining operations, and agricultural operations.

B) The plan shall set forth an informative, conceptual and schematic representation of the proposed activity by means of maps, graphs, charts, or other written or drawn documents so as to give the agency an opportunity to make a reasonably informed decision regarding the proposed activity.

C) The plan shall contain the following information:

The ordinance can identify the scale of maps to be included with the analyses in items 2) through 7). A 1” = 50’ to 1” = 100’ scale will generally provide sufficient detail.

1) a location or vicinity map,
2) field delineated and surveyed streams, springs, seeps, bodies of water, and wetlands (include a minimum of two hundred (200) feet into adjacent properties),
3) field delineated and surveyed forest buffers,
4) limits of the ultimate one hundred (100) year floodplain,
   The limits of the ultimate floodplain (i.e., the floodplain under “built-out” conditions) may not be available in all locations.
5) hydric soils mapped in accordance with the NRCS soil survey of the site area,
6) steep slopes greater than fifteen (15) percent for areas adjacent to and within two hundred
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

(200) feet of streams, wetlands, or other water bodies, and
The ordinance may also explicitly define how slopes are measured. For example, the buffer may be divided into sections of a specific width (e.g., 25 feet) and the slope for each segment reported. Alternatively, slopes can be reported in segments divided by breaks in slope.

7) a narrative of the species and distribution of existing vegetation within the buffer.

D) The buffer plan shall be submitted in conjunction with the required grading plan for any development, and the forest buffer should be clearly delineated on the final grading plan.

E) Permanent boundary markers, in the form of signage approved by (Natural Resources or Planning Agency), shall be installed prior to final approval of the required clearing and grading plan. Signs shall be placed at the edge of the Middle Zone (See Section VI.E).

Section VI. Design Standards for Forest Buffers
A) A forest buffer for a stream system shall consist of a forested strip of land extending along both sides of a stream and its adjacent wetlands, floodplains, or slopes. The forest buffer width shall be adjusted to include contiguous sensitive areas, such as steep slopes or erodible soils, where development or disturbance may adversely affect water quality, streams, wetlands, or other water bodies.

B) The forest buffer shall begin at the edge of the stream bank of the active channel.

C) The required width for all forest buffers (i.e., the base width) shall be a minimum of one hundred feet, with the requirement to expand the buffer depending on: 1) stream order; 2) percent slope; 3) 100-year floodplain; and 4) wetlands or critical areas. The width of the stream buffer varies from 25 feet to up to 200 feet in ordinances throughout the United States. The width chosen by a jurisdiction will depend on the sensitivity and characteristics of the resource being protected and political realities in the community.

1) In third-order and higher streams, add 25 feet to the base width.

2) Forest Buffer width shall be modified if there are steep slopes which are within a close proximity to the stream and drain into the stream system. In those cases, the forest buffer width can be adjusted.

Several methods may be used to adjust buffer width for steep slopes. Two examples include:
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percent Slope</th>
<th>Width of Buffer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15 to 17%</td>
<td>add 10 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 to 20%</td>
<td>add 30 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 to 23%</td>
<td>add 50 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 to 25%</td>
<td>add 60 feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D) Water pollution hazards - The following land uses and/or activities are designated as potential water pollution hazards, and must be set back from any stream or water body by the distance indicated below:

1) storage of hazardous substances (150 feet),
2) above or below ground petroleum storage facilities (150 feet),
3) drain fields from on-site sewage disposal and treatment system (i.e., septic systems—100 feet),
4) raised septic systems (250 feet),
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

5) solid waste landfills or junk yards (300 feet),
6) confined animal feedlot operations (250 feet),
7) subsurface discharges from a wastewater treatment plant (100 feet), and
8) land application of biosolids (100 feet).

For surface water supplies, the setbacks should be doubled.

A community should carefully consider which activities or land uses should be designated as potential water pollution hazards. The list of potential hazards shown above is not exhaustive, and others may need to be added depending on the major pollutants of concern and the uses of water.

E) The forest buffer shall be composed of three distinct zones, with each zone having its own set of allowable uses and vegetative targets as specified in this ordinance. (See Figure 2).

Although a three-zone buffer system is highly recommended, the widths and specific uses allowed in each zone may vary between jurisdictions.

1) Zone 1—Streamside Zone
   a) The function of the streamside zone is to protect the physical and ecological integrity of the stream ecosystem.
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

b) The streamside zone will begin at the edge of the stream bank of the active channel and extend a minimum of 25 feet from the top of the bank.

c) Allowable uses within this zone are highly restricted to:
   i) flood control structures,
   ii) utility rights of way,
   iii) footpaths, and
   iv) road crossings, where permitted.

d) The vegetative target for the streamside zone is undisturbed native vegetation. This ordinance assumes that native vegetation in the stream corridor is forest. In some regions of the United States, other vegetation such as prairie may be native. See the Napa, California buffer ordinance at www.stormwatercenter.net/Model%20Ordinances/napa_buffer_ordinance.htm for an example of a stream buffer ordinance that protects non-forested systems.

2) Zone 2—Middle Zone
   a) The function of the middle zone is to protect key components of the stream and to provide distance between upland development and the streamside zone.
   b) The middle zone will begin at the outer edge of the streamside zone and extend a minimum of 50 plus any additional buffer width as specified in Section VI C.
   c) Allowable uses within the middle zone are restricted to:
      i) biking or hiking paths,
      ii) stormwater management facilities, with the approval of (Local agency responsible for stormwater),
      iii) recreational uses as approved by (Planning Agency), and
      iv) limited tree clearing with approval from (Forestry agency or Planning Agency).
   d) The vegetative target for the middle zone is mature native vegetation adapted to the region.

3) Zone 3—Outer Zone
   a) The function of the outer zone is to prevent encroachment into the forest buffer and to filter runoff from residential and commercial development.
   b) The outer zone will begin at the outward edge of the middle zone and provide a minimum width of 25 feet between Zone 2 and the nearest permanent structure.
   c) There shall be no septic systems, permanent structures, or impervious cover, with the exception of paths within the outer zone.
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

d) The vegetative target for the outer zone may vary, although the planting of native vegetation should be encouraged to increase the total width of the buffer.

Section VII. Buffer Management and Maintenance
A) The forest buffer, including wetlands and floodplains, shall be managed to enhance and maximize the unique value of these resources. Management includes specific limitations on alteration of the natural conditions of these resources. The following practices and activities are restricted within Zones 1 and 2 of the forest buffer, except with approval by (Forestry, Planning, or Natural Resources Agency):

1) clearing of existing vegetation,
2) soil disturbance by grading, stripping, or other practices,
3) filling or dumping,
4) draining by ditches, underdrains, or other systems,
5) using, storing, or applying pesticides, except for the spot spraying of noxious weeds or non-native species consistent with recommendations of (Forestry Agency),
6) housing, grazing, or other maintenance of livestock, and
7) storing or operating motorized vehicles, except for maintenance and emergency use approved by (Forestry, Planning, or Natural Resources Agency)

B) The following structures, practices, and activities are permitted in the forest buffer, with specific design or maintenance features, subject to the review of (Forestry, Planning, or Natural Resources Agency):

1) Roads, bridges, paths, and utilities:
   a) an analysis needs to be conducted to ensure that no economically feasible alternative is available,
   b) the right of way should be the minimum width needed to allow for maintenance access and installation,
   c) the angle of the crossing shall be perpendicular to the stream or buffer in order to minimize clearing requirements, and
   d) the minimum number of road crossings should be used within each subdivision, and no more than one fairway crossing is allowed for every 1,000 feet of buffer.
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

2) Stormwater management:
   e) an analysis needs to be conducted to ensure that no economically feasible alternative is available, and that the project is either necessary for flood control, or significantly improves the water quality or habitat in the stream,
   f) in new developments, on-site and non-structural alternatives will be preferred over larger facilities within the stream buffer,
   g) when constructing stormwater management facilities (i.e., BMPs), the area cleared will be limited to the area required for construction and adequate maintenance access, as outlined in the most recent edition of (Refer to Stormwater Manual), and
   Rather than place specific stormwater BMP design criteria in an ordinance, it is often preferable to reference a manual. Therefore, specific design information can change over time without going through the formal process needed to change ordinance language. The Maryland Stormwater Design Manual, is one example of an up-to-date stormwater design manual. For more information, go to www.mde.state.md.us. Under topics, choose “Stormwater Design Manual.”
   h) material dredged or otherwise removed from a BMP shall be stored outside the buffer.

3) Stream restoration projects, facilities, and activities approved by (Forestry, Planning, or Natural Resources Agency) are permitted within the forest buffer.

4) Water quality monitoring and stream gauging are permitted within the forest buffer, as approved by (Forestry, Planning or Natural Resources Agency).

5) Individual trees within the forest buffer may be removed which are in danger of falling, causing damage to dwellings or other structures, or causing blockage of the stream.

6) Other timber cutting techniques approved by the agency may be undertaken within the forest buffer under the advice and guidance of (State or Federal Forestry Agency), if necessary to preserve the forest from extensive pest infestation, disease infestation, or threat from fire.

C) All plats prepared for recording and all right-of-way plats shall clearly:
   1) show the extent of any forest buffer on the subject property by metes and bounds,
   2) label the forest buffer,
   3) provide a note to reference any forest buffer stating: “There shall be no clearing, grading, construction or disturbance of vegetation except as permitted by the agency,” and
   4) provide a note to reference any protective covenants governing all forest buffers areas stating: “Any forest buffer shown hereon is subject to protective covenants which may be found
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

in the land records and which restrict disturbance and use of these areas.”

D) All forest buffer areas shall be maintained through a declaration of protective covenant, which is required to be submitted for approval by (Planning Board or Agency). The covenant shall be recorded in the land records and shall run with the land and continue in perpetuity. This protective covenant can be kept either by the local government agency responsible for management of environmental resources, or by an approved non-profit organization. An example conservation easement is included later in this section.

E) All lease agreements must contain a notation regarding the presence and location of protective covenants for forest buffer areas, and which shall contain information on the management and maintenance requirements for the forest buffer for the new property owner.

F) An offer of dedication of a forest buffer area to the agency shall not be interpreted to mean that this automatically conveys to the general public the right of access to this area.

G) (Responsible Individual or Group) shall inspect the buffer annually and immediately following severe storms for evidence of sediment deposition, erosion, or concentrated flow channels and corrective actions taken to ensure the integrity and functions of the forest buffer. A local ordinance will need to designate the individual or group responsible for buffer maintenance. Often, the responsible party will be identified in any protective covenants associated with the property.

H) Forest buffer areas may be allowed to grow into their vegetative target state naturally, but methods to enhance the successional process such as active reforestation may be used when deemed necessary by (Natural Resources or Forestry Agency) to ensure the preservation and propagation of the buffer area. Forest buffer areas may also be enhanced through reforestation or other growth techniques as a form of mitigation for achieving buffer preservation requirements. Explicit forestry management criteria are often included in a forestry or natural resources conservation ordinance. An example forest conservation ordinance from Frederick County, Maryland is included in the Miscellaneous portion of this site at www.stormwatercenter.net/Model%20Ordinances/misc_forest_conservation.htm.
Section VIII. Enforcement Procedures
A) (Director of Responsible Agency) is authorized and empowered to enforce requirements of this ordinance in accordance with procedures of this section.

B) If, upon inspection or investigation, the director or his/her designee is of the opinion that any person has violated any provision of this ordinance, he/she shall with reasonable promptness issue a correction notice to the person. Each such notice shall be in writing and shall describe the nature of the violation, including a reference to the provision within this ordinance which has been violated. In addition, the notice shall set a reasonable time for the abatement and correction of the violation.

C) If it is determined that the violation or violations continue after the time fixed for abatement and correction has expired, the director shall issue a stop work order and citation by certified mail to the person who is in violation. Each such notice shall be in writing and shall describe the nature of the violation, including a reference to the provision within this ordinance which has been violated, and what penalty, if any, is proposed to be assessed. The person charged has thirty (30) days within which to contest the citation or proposed assessment of penalty and to file a request for a hearing with the director or his designee. At the conclusion of this hearing, the director or his designee will issue a final order, subject to appeal to the appropriate authority. If, within thirty (30) days from the receipt of the citation issued by the director, the person fails to contest the citation or proposed assessment of penalty, the citation or proposed assessment of penalty shall be deemed the final order of the director.

D) Any person who violates any provision of this ordinance may be liable for any cost or expenses (i.e., legal, professional consultation) incurred as a result thereof by the agency.

E) Penalties which may be assessed for those deemed to be in violation may include:
   1) a civil penalty not to exceed one thousand dollars ($1,000.00) for each violation with each days continuance considered a separate violation,
   2) a criminal penalty in the form of a fine of not more than one thousand dollars ($1,000.00) for each violation or imprisonment for not more than ninety (90) days, or both. Every day that such violations shall continue will be considered a separate offense, and
   3) anyone who knowingly makes any false statements in any application, record, plat, or plan
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

required by this ordinance shall upon conviction be punished by a fine of not more than one thousand dollars ($1,000.00) for each violation or imprisonment for not more than thirty (30) days, or both.

Specific penalties will vary between communities, and should reflect realistically enforceable penalties given the political realities of a jurisdiction.

F) In addition to any other sanctions listed in this ordinance, a person who fails to comply with provisions of this buffer ordinance shall be liable to the agency in a civil action for damages in an amount equal to twice the cost of restoring the buffer. Damages that are recovered in accordance with this action shall be used for the restoration of buffer systems or for the administration of programs for the protection and restoration of water quality, streams, wetlands, and floodplains.

Section IX. Waivers/Variations

A) This ordinance shall apply to all proposed development except for development which was initiated prior to the effective date of this ordinance:

   1) is covered by a valid, unexpired plat in accordance with development regulations,
   2) is covered by a current, executed public works agreement,
   3) is covered by a valid, unexpired building permit,
   4) has been accepted to apply for a building permit, and
   5) has been granted a waiver in accordance with current development regulations.

B) The director of the agency may grant a variance for the following:

   1) projects or activities where it can be demonstrated that strict compliance with the ordinance would result in practical difficulty or financial hardship,
   2) projects or activities serving a public need where no feasible alternative is available,
   3) repair and maintenance of public improvements where avoidance and minimization of adverse impacts to nontidal wetlands and associated aquatic ecosystems have been addressed, and
   4) developments which have had buffers applied in conformance with previously issued requirements.

C) Waivers for development may also be granted in two additional forms, if deemed appropriate by the director:
Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).

1) the buffer width may be relaxed and the buffer permitted to become narrower at some points as long as the average width of the buffer meets the minimum requirement. This averaging of the buffer may be used to allow for the presence of an existing structure or to recover a lost lot, as long as the streamside zone (Zone I) is not disturbed by the narrowing, and no new structures are built within the one hundred (100) year floodplain, and

2) (planning agency) may offer credit for additional developmental density elsewhere on the site in compensation for the loss of developable land due to the requirements of this ordinance. This compensation may increase the total number of dwelling units on the site up to the amount permitted under the base zoning.

D) The applicant shall submit a written request for a variance to the agency director. The application shall include specific reasons justifying the variance and any other information necessary to evaluate the proposed variance request. The agency may require an alternatives analysis that clearly demonstrates that no other feasible alternatives exist and that minimal impact will occur as a result of the project or development.

E) In granting a request for a variance, the agency director may require site design, landscape planting, fencing, the placement of signs, and the establishment of water quality best management practices to reduce adverse impacts on water quality, streams, wetlands, and floodplains.

Section X. Conflict With Other Regulations
Where the standards and management requirements of this buffer ordinance are in conflict with other laws, regulations, and policies regarding streams, steep slopes, erodible soils, wetlands, floodplains, timber harvesting, land disturbance activities or other environmental protective measures, the more restrictive shall apply.

References

Table C-1. Model ordinance for stream buffers (continued).


Table C-2. Stream protection strategies under the watershed-based zoning framework.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urban Stream Classification</th>
<th>Sensitive 0–10% Impervious Cover</th>
<th>Degrading 11–25% Impervious Cover</th>
<th>Non-supporting 26–100% Impervious Cover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stream Quality Goal</td>
<td>Preserve biodiversity and channel stability at the predevelopment level.</td>
<td>Limit degradation to stream quality.</td>
<td>Minimize pollutant loads delivered to downstream waters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Use Controls</td>
<td>Watershed-wide limits on impervious cover, and restrictions on specific site impervious cover.</td>
<td>Upper limit on watershed impervious cover.</td>
<td>No watershed imperviousness limits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-2. Stream protection strategies under the watershed-based zoning framework (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urban Stream Classification</th>
<th>Sensitive 0–10% Impervious Cover</th>
<th>Degrading 11–25% Impervious Cover</th>
<th>Non-supporting 26–100% Impervious Cover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring</td>
<td>Biological indicators</td>
<td>Biological and physical indicators</td>
<td>Water quality trends. BMP performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(including single-species (e.g., trout).)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enforcement</td>
<td>GIS tracking of impervious cover.</td>
<td>GIS, biomonitoring trends, BMP surveys.</td>
<td>Simulation model, water quality standards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development Rights</td>
<td>Transferred out.</td>
<td>No transfers.</td>
<td>Transferred in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Tools</td>
<td>Land acquisition, extraordinary erosion and sediment control, special review.</td>
<td>Regional BMPs.</td>
<td>Pollution prevention, stormwater retrofits, illicit connections, restoration inventory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table C-3. Benefits of urban and community riparian forests and urban stream buffers.

1. **Reduces watershed imperviousness by 5%**. An average buffer width of 100 feet protects up to 5% of watershed area from future development.

2. **Distances areas of impervious cover from stream**. More room is made available for placement of BMPs and septic system performance is improved.

3. **Reduces small drainage problems and complaints**. When properties are located too close to a stream, residents are likely to experience and complain about backyard flooding, standing water, and bank erosion. A buffer greatly reduces complaints.

4. **Stream “right of way” allows for lateral movement**. Most stream channels shift or widen over time; a buffer protects both the stream and nearby properties.

5. **Effective flood control**. Other, expensive flood controls are not necessary if a buffer
Table C-3. Benefits of urban and community riparian forests and urban stream buffers (continued).

includes the 100-year floodplain.

6. **Protection from streambank erosion.** Tree roots consolidate the soils of floodplain and stream banks, reducing the potential for severe bank erosion.

7. **Increases property values.** Home buyers perceive buffers as attractive amenities to the community. Ninety percent of buffer administrators feel buffers have a neutral or positive impact on property value.

8. **Increased pollutant removal.** When designed properly, buffers can provide effective pollutant removal for development located within 150 feet of the buffer boundary.

9. **Foundation for present or future greenways.** Linear nature of the buffer provides for connected open space and trailways, allowing pedestrians and bicycles to move more efficiently through a community.

10. **Provides food and habitat for wildlife.** Leaf litter is the base food source for many stream ecosystems; forests also provide woody debris that creates cover and habitat structure for aquatic insects and fish.

11. **Mitigates stream warming.** Shading by the forest canopy prevents further stream warming in urban watersheds.

12. **Protection of associated wetlands.** A wide stream buffer can include riverine and palustrine wetlands that are frequently found near streams.

13. **Prevent disturbance to steep slopes.** Removing construction activity from steep slopes is the best way to prevent severe soil erosion rates.

14. **Preserves important terrestrial habitat.** Riparian corridors are important transition zones, rich in plant and animal species. A mile of stream buffer can provide 25 to 40 acres of habitat areas.
Table C-3. Benefits of urban and community riparian forests and urban stream buffers (continued).

15. **Corridors for conservation.** Unbroken stream buffers provide “highways” for plant and animal migrations.

16. **Essential habitat for amphibians.** Amphibians require both aquatic and terrestrial habitats and are dependent on riparian environments to complete their life cycle.

17. **Fewer barriers to fish migration.** Chances for migrating fish are improved when stream crossings are prevented or carefully planned.

18. **Discourages excessive storm drain enclosures/channel hardening.** Prevents increases in runoff from impervious cover and subsequent eroding or overflowing of headwater streams.

19. **Provides space for stormwater ponds.** When properly placed, structural BMPs within the buffer can be an ideal location to remove pollutants and control flows from urban areas and raise property values from 18 to 28%.

20. **Allowance for future restoration.** Even a modest buffer provides space and access for future stream restoration, bank stabilization, or reforestation.

Table C-4. Site factors that enhance or reduce pollutant removal performance in urban riparian forests or stream buffers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors that enhance performance</th>
<th>Factors that reduce performance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slopes less than 5%</td>
<td>Slopes greater than 5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contributing flow lengths &lt;150 feet</td>
<td>Overland flow paths over 300 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water table close to surface</td>
<td>Groundwater far below surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check dams/level spreaders</td>
<td>Contact times less than 5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeable, but not sandy soils</td>
<td>Compacted soils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growing season</td>
<td>Non-growing season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long length of buffer or swale</td>
<td>Buffers less than 10 feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-4. Site factors that enhance or reduce pollutant removal performance in urban riparian forests or stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors that enhance performance</th>
<th>Factors that reduce performance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Organic matter, humus, or mulch layer</td>
<td>Snowmelt conditions, ice cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small stormwater runoff events</td>
<td>Stormwater runoff events greater than 2 per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry runoff velocity less than 1.5 feet per second</td>
<td>Entry runoff velocity more than 1.5 feet per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swales that are routinely mowed</td>
<td>Sediment buildup at top of swale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly-drained soils, deep roots</td>
<td>Trees with shallow root systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dense grass cover, six inches tall</td>
<td>Tall grass, sparse vegetative cover</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table C-5. Shrubs and grasses adapted to urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Height (ft.)</th>
<th>Drainage Adaptation</th>
<th>Plant Material*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shrubs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acacia, Rose</td>
<td>Robinia hispida</td>
<td>2–10</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alder, Smooth</td>
<td>Alnus serrulata</td>
<td>To 20</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purple Beautyberry</td>
<td>Callicarpa americana</td>
<td>To 5</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckeye, Red</td>
<td>Aesculus pavia</td>
<td>To 20</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-5. Shrubs and grasses adapted to urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Height (ft.)</th>
<th>Drainage Adaptation</th>
<th>Plant Material*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shrubs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckhorn, Lanceleaf</td>
<td><em>Rhamus caroliniana</em></td>
<td>To 35</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burningbush</td>
<td><em>Euonymus atropurpureus</em></td>
<td>6–12</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttonbush</td>
<td><em>Cephalanthus occidentalis</em></td>
<td>3–8</td>
<td>Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinquapin, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Castanea pumila</em></td>
<td>10–15</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corkwood</td>
<td><em>Letneria floridana</em></td>
<td>To 25</td>
<td>Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Gray</td>
<td><em>Cornus racemosa</em></td>
<td>To 10</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC, URC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Roughleaf</td>
<td><em>Cornus drummondii</em></td>
<td>4–15</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC, URC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elderberry</td>
<td><em>Sambucus canadensis</em></td>
<td>3–13</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC, URC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groundsel-Tree</td>
<td><em>Baccharis halimifolia</em></td>
<td>To 9</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td><em>Crataegus spp.</em></td>
<td>To 15</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table C-5. Shrubs and grasses adapted to urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Height (ft.)</th>
<th>Drainage Adaptation</th>
<th>Plant Material*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shrubs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazelnut</td>
<td><em>Corylus americana</em></td>
<td>To 10</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, Deciduous</td>
<td><em>Ilex decidua</em></td>
<td>10–20</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, Yaupon</td>
<td><em>Ilex vomitoria</em></td>
<td>5–15</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrangea, Wild</td>
<td><em>Hydrangea arborescens</em></td>
<td>5–15</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indigobush</td>
<td><em>Amorpha fruticosa</em></td>
<td>To 13</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling, RC, URC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pepperbush</td>
<td><em>Clethra alnifolia</em></td>
<td>To 10</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plum, American</td>
<td><em>Prunus americana</em></td>
<td>15–30</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plum, Chickasaw</td>
<td><em>Prunus angustifolia</em></td>
<td>To 20</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privet, Swamp</td>
<td><em>Forestiera acuminata</em></td>
<td>To 12</td>
<td>Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spicebush, Common</td>
<td><em>Lindera benzoi</em></td>
<td>To 12</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spicebush, Hairy</td>
<td><em>Lindera melissaefolium</em></td>
<td>To 6</td>
<td>Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-5. Shrubs and grasses adapted to urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Height (ft.)</th>
<th>Drainage Adaptation</th>
<th>Plant Material*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shrubs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirea, Steeplebush</td>
<td><em>Spirea tomentos</em></td>
<td>To 5</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling, RC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumac, Smooth</td>
<td><em>Rhus glabra</em></td>
<td>4–15</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling, Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumac, Winged</td>
<td><em>Rhus copallina</em></td>
<td>4–10</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea, New Jersey</td>
<td><em>Ceanothus americanus</em></td>
<td>To 4</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viburnum, Blackhaw</td>
<td><em>Viburnum prunifoium</em></td>
<td>6–15</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viburnum, Rusty</td>
<td><em>Viburnum rufidulum</em></td>
<td>6–18</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viburnum, Wild Raisin</td>
<td><em>Viburnum nudum</em></td>
<td>To 20</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waxmyrtle</td>
<td><em>Myrcia cerifera</em></td>
<td>10–30</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willow, Tall Prairie</td>
<td><em>Salix humilis</em></td>
<td>To 13</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>RC, URC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Witch-hazel</td>
<td><em>Hamamelis virginiana</em></td>
<td>10–25</td>
<td>Well</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-5. Shrubs and grasses adapted to urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Height (ft.)</th>
<th>Drainage Adaptation</th>
<th>Plant Material*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grasses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluestem, Big</td>
<td>Andropogon gerardii</td>
<td>4–6</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluestem, Little</td>
<td>Schizacharrium scoparium</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamegrass, Eastern</td>
<td>Tripsacum dactyloides</td>
<td>5–9</td>
<td>Excessively to Poorly</td>
<td>Seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indiangrass</td>
<td>Sorghastrum nutans</td>
<td>3–7</td>
<td>Well to Excessively</td>
<td>Seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maidencane</td>
<td>Panicum hemitomon</td>
<td>2–5</td>
<td>Well to Poorly</td>
<td>Rhizomes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*RC=Root cutting, URC=Un-rooted cutting.
Table C-6. Bush, legume, and grass seed planting guide for urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type*</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Lbs. per acre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bicolor Lespedeza (seed)</td>
<td>Bush (P)</td>
<td>April to July</td>
<td>April to July</td>
<td>May to July</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicolor Lespedeza (plants)</td>
<td>Bush (P)</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Lespedeza</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>March to June</td>
<td>April to June</td>
<td>April to June</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browntop Millet</td>
<td>Grass (A)</td>
<td>Early spring to late summer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dove Proso Millet</td>
<td>Grass (A)</td>
<td>Early spring to late summer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese Millet</td>
<td>Grass (A)</td>
<td>Early spring to late summer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia One Birdsfoot Trefoil*</td>
<td>Legume (P)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August 15</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bigbee Berseem Clover</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crimson Clover</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osceola Ladino Clover</td>
<td>Legume (P)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-6. Bush, legume, and grass seed planting guide for urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type*</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Lbs. per acre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regal Ladino Clover</td>
<td>Legume (P)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Clover</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuchi Arrowleaf Clover</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrenns Abruzzi Rye</td>
<td>Grain (A)</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron Clay Peas</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>March to Sept.</td>
<td>April to Sept.</td>
<td>April to Sept.</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lathco Flat Pea</td>
<td>Legume (P)</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesbania</td>
<td>Legume (A)</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switchgrass</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Jan. to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big Bluestem</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Jan. to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Bluestem</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Jan. to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-6. Bush, legume, and grass seed planting guide for urban and community riparian forests and stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type*</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Lbs. per acre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Gamagrass</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Jan. to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow Indiangrass</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Jan. to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maidencane</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>March to July</td>
<td>Feb. to Jun</td>
<td>March to June</td>
<td>10–15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virginia Wildrye</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>March to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kleingrass</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>March to July</td>
<td>Feb. to May</td>
<td>March to May</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rye</td>
<td>Grass (A)</td>
<td>Aug. 25 to Oct. 1</td>
<td>Sept. 1 to Oct. 15</td>
<td>Sept. 15 to Nov. 1</td>
<td>10–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat</td>
<td>Grass (A)</td>
<td>Aug. 25 to Oct. 1</td>
<td>Sept. 1 to Oct. 15</td>
<td>Sept. 15 to Nov. 1</td>
<td>1 bushel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northpa, Southpa Bitter Paniculm</td>
<td>Grass (P)</td>
<td>Mar to Jun**</td>
<td>April to June**</td>
<td>15–20,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X – Not adapted or recommended
* (P) = Perennial; (A) = Annual
** Vegetative propagation only
Table C-7. Tree, shrub, and vine planting guide for urban riparian forests and urban stream buffers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Feet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chinquenpin Oak</td>
<td>Shrub</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>20 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sawtooth Oak</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>20 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wild Pear</td>
<td>Shrub</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>20 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wild Plum</td>
<td>Shrub</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>10 to 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>20 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Cherry</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huckleberry</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Mulberry</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flowering Dogwood</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table C-7.** Tree, shrub, and vine planting guide for urban riparian forests and urban stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Spacing</th>
<th>Feet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sweetgum</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Beech</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugarberry</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big O Crabapple</td>
<td>Small tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gobbler Sawtooth Oak</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golden Chinquepin</td>
<td>Small tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>30 to 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chestnut var Edward</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>25 to 30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayhaws</td>
<td>Shrub</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>10 to 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wax Myrtle</td>
<td>Shrub</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>10 to 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-7. Tree, shrub, and vine planting guide for urban riparian forests and urban stream buffers (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Zone 1</th>
<th>Zone 2</th>
<th>Zone 3</th>
<th>Spacing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black Locust</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey Locust</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitternut Hickory</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mockernut Hickory</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shagbark Hickory</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pignut Hickory</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackgum</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hackberry</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honeysuckle</td>
<td>Vine</td>
<td>Jan. to Feb.</td>
<td>Jan. to March</td>
<td>Dec. to April</td>
<td>2 x 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table C-8. The three-zone urban and community riparian forest or stream buffer system.

![Three-zone buffer system](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Streamside Zone</th>
<th>Middle Zone</th>
<th>Outer Zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Protect the physical integrity of the stream ecosystem.</td>
<td>Provide distance between upland development and streamside zone.</td>
<td>Prevent encroachment and filter backyard runoff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Minimum 25 feet, plus wetlands and critical habitats.</td>
<td>Fifty to 100 feet, depending on stream order, slope, and 100-year floodplain.</td>
<td>Twenty-five feet minimum, setback to structures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetative Target</td>
<td>Undisturbed mature forest, reforest if grass.</td>
<td>Managed forest, some cleaning allowable.</td>
<td>Forest encouraged, but usually turfgrass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowable Uses</td>
<td>Very Restricted (e.g., flood control, utility right of ways, footpaths)</td>
<td>Restricted (e.g., some recreational uses, some stormwater BMPs, bike paths, tree removal by permit)</td>
<td>Unrestricted (e.g., residential uses including lawn, garden, compost, yard wastes, most stormwater BMPs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D - Vegetation Recommendations

Table D-1. Recommended species and seeding rates for temporary cover in urban and community areas of Mississippi.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Preferred Planting Dates</th>
<th>Seeding Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Browntop Millet</td>
<td>May–July 15</td>
<td>25 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorghum/Sudangrass</td>
<td>April–July</td>
<td>35 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryegrass (Gulf or Marshall)</td>
<td>September–October</td>
<td>30 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats (Florida 501 Bob)</td>
<td>September–October</td>
<td>4 bushels/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat</td>
<td>September–October</td>
<td>2 bushels/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rye (Vitagrazee)</td>
<td>September–October</td>
<td>2 bushels/acre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table D-2. Recommended species and seeding rates for permanent cover in urban and community areas of Mississippi.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Preferred Planting Dates</th>
<th>Seeding Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lespedeza (Sericea)</td>
<td>March–April</td>
<td>30 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fescue (Ky-31)</td>
<td>September–November</td>
<td>20 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahiagrass</td>
<td>February–June or</td>
<td>30 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>September–November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bermudagrass (hulled)</td>
<td>March–June</td>
<td>8 lbs. seed/acre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table D-3. Recommended species and seeding rates for wildlife plantings in urban and community areas of Mississippi.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wildlife Planting Recommendations*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Species</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browntop Millet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter Peas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Clover (Redland, Atlas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Clover (Regal, Osceola)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Some landowners may wish to establish vegetation which will provide both ground cover and benefit wildlife species. This table lists those plants which may serve both purposes.

Table D-4. Seeding chart for common grasses for urban and community areas of Mississippi.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seeding Rate/Acre</th>
<th>Planting Time</th>
<th>Desired pH Range</th>
<th>Fertilization Rate</th>
<th>Method of Establishment</th>
<th>Zone²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common Bermuda</td>
<td>15 lbs. alone 10 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>3/1–7/15 9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed or sod</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahia</td>
<td>40 lbs. alone 30 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>2/1–7/15 9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>South, Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fescue</td>
<td>40 lbs. alone 30 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>North, Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Augustine</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Sod or plugs only</td>
<td>South, Central</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table D-4. Seeding chart for common grasses for urban and community areas of Mississippi (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seeding Rate/Acre</th>
<th>Planting Time</th>
<th>Desired pH Range</th>
<th>Fertilization Rate</th>
<th>Method of Establishment</th>
<th>Zone¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centipede</td>
<td>4 lbs. alone</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed or sod</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2½ lbs. mixture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpet Grass</td>
<td>10 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed or sod</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpet Grass</td>
<td>15 lbs. alone</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed or sod</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpet Grass</td>
<td>10 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed or sod</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creeping Red Fescue</td>
<td>30 lbs. alone</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creeping Red Fescue</td>
<td>22½ lbs. mixture</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oysia Grass</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Sod or plugs only</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creeping Red Fescue</td>
<td>10 lbs. alone</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creeping Red Fescue</td>
<td>5 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weeping Lovegrass</td>
<td>10 lbs. alone</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weeping Lovegrass</td>
<td>5 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>3/1–7/15</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat*</td>
<td>90 lbs. alone</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rye-grass*</td>
<td>30 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rye-grass*</td>
<td>30 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Clover*</td>
<td>5 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Clover*</td>
<td>5 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crimson Clover*</td>
<td>25 lbs. alone</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crimson Clover*</td>
<td>15 lbs. mixture</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hairy Vetch*</td>
<td>30 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hairy Vetch*</td>
<td>30 lbs.</td>
<td>9/1–11/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>400 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown-top Millet*</td>
<td>40 lbs. alone</td>
<td>4/1–8/30</td>
<td>6.0–7.0</td>
<td>600 lbs., 13-13-13</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown-top Millet*</td>
<td>15 lbs. mixture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Annuals. For permanent seeding, annuals can only be used in a mixture with perennials.

¹North—north of Highway 82; Central—south of Highway 82 and north of Highway 84; South—south of Highway 84.
Table D-5. Recommended trees for medians, parking lots, and shopping centers in urban and community areas.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Botanical Name</th>
<th>Upright Form</th>
<th>Road Salt Tolerance</th>
<th>Tolerates Harsh Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armstrong Red Maple</td>
<td>Acer rubrum Armstrongí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldspire Sugar Maple</td>
<td>Acer saccharum Goldspireí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumulus Serviceberry</td>
<td>Amelanchier x grandiflora Cumulusí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastigiate Hornbeam</td>
<td>Carpinus betulus Fastigiataí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar Hackberry</td>
<td>Celtis lacvigata</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawyck Purple Beech</td>
<td>Fagus sylvatica Dawyck Purpleí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastigiata Beech</td>
<td>Fagus sylvatica Fastigiataí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Ash</td>
<td>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastigiata Ginkgo</td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba Fastigiataí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lakeview Ginkgo</td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba Lakeviewí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princeton Sentry Ginkgo</td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba Princeton Sentryí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thornless Honeylocust</td>
<td>Gleditsia trianxanthos var. inermis</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorns</td>
<td>Hawthorn spp.</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Redcedar</td>
<td>Juniperus virginiana</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golden Raintree</td>
<td>Koelreuteria paniculata</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweetgum</td>
<td>Liquidambar styraciflua</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Gem Magnolia</td>
<td>Magnolia grandiflora Little Gemí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sycamore</td>
<td>Platanus occidentalis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carolina Laurel Cherry</td>
<td>Prunus caroliniana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purple-Leaf Plum</td>
<td>Prunus cerasifera Atropurpurcaí</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bradford or Flowering Pear</td>
<td>Pyrus calleryana Capitolií</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skyrocket English Oak</td>
<td>Quercus robur Fastigiataí</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table D-5. Recommended trees for medians, parking lots, and shopping centers in urban and community areas (continued).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Botanical Name</th>
<th>Upright Form</th>
<th>Road Salt Tolerance</th>
<th>Tolerates Harsh Conditions&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baldcypress</td>
<td><em>Taxodium distichum</em></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Littleleaf Linden</td>
<td><em>Tilia cordata</em></td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacebark Elm</td>
<td><em>Ulmus parvifolia</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Listed tree species are suitable for median plantings in Tennessee. Ask for and obtain the correct cultivar or variety in your community. Many of these trees have been cultivated to provide an upright crown form that is preferred for medians and other landscape purposes. <sup>1</sup>Harsh conditions include: restricted root space, narrow growing space, and city environments.

### Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Large Landscape Areas&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash, Green</td>
<td><em>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</em></td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash, White</td>
<td><em>Fraxinus americana</em></td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baldcypress</td>
<td><em>Taxodium distichum</em></td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy</td>
<td>Canopy Size Category</td>
<td>Level of Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beech, American</td>
<td>Fagus grandifolia</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River</td>
<td>Betula nigra</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River 'Heritage'</td>
<td>Betula nigra 'Heritage'</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackgum (Tupelo)</td>
<td>Nyssa sylvatica</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boxelder</td>
<td>Acer negundo</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalpa, Southern</td>
<td>Catalpa bignonioides</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherry, Black</td>
<td>Prunus serotina</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cottonwood, Eastern</td>
<td>Populus deltoides</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crapemyrtle, Common</td>
<td>Lagerstroemia indica</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>VS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Flowering</td>
<td>Cornus florida</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood Flower. Pink</td>
<td>Cornus florida var. rubra</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, American</td>
<td>Ulmus americana</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Canopy Size Category&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Level of Use&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Slippery</td>
<td>Ulmus rubra</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Winged</td>
<td>Ulmus alata</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Bitternut</td>
<td>Carya cordiformis</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Mockernut</td>
<td>Carya tomentosa</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Pignut</td>
<td>Carya glabra</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, So. Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata var. australis</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, American</td>
<td>Ilex opaca</td>
<td>150 VS</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, Deciduous</td>
<td>Ilex decidua</td>
<td>150 VS</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honeylocust</td>
<td>Gleditsia triacanthos</td>
<td>900 M</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hophornbeam, American</td>
<td>Ostrya virginiana</td>
<td>900 M</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hornbeam, American</td>
<td>Carpinus caroliniana</td>
<td>900 M</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Cucumber</td>
<td>Magnolia acuminata</td>
<td>1,600 L</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy</td>
<td>Level of Use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Southern</td>
<td>Magnolia grandiflora</td>
<td>1,600 L P E E X</td>
<td>E X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, So. ‘Little Gem’</td>
<td>Magnolia grandiflora ‘Little Gem’</td>
<td>150 VS P G X</td>
<td>G E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Sweetbay</td>
<td>Magnolia virginiana</td>
<td>900 M P E G E E E</td>
<td>E E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Red</td>
<td>Acer rubrum</td>
<td>900 M P E G E G E</td>
<td>E E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Silver</td>
<td>Acer saccharinum</td>
<td>1,600 L P E E E</td>
<td>G X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Florida Sugar</td>
<td>Acer barbatum</td>
<td>900 M P E E E</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar</td>
<td>Acer saccharum</td>
<td>1,600 L P E E E</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar ‘Legacy’</td>
<td>Acer saccharum ‘Legacy’</td>
<td>1,600 L C G G G</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulberry, Red</td>
<td>Morus rubra</td>
<td>900 M P G G G</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Black</td>
<td>Quercus velutina</td>
<td>1,600 L P G G G</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Cherrybark</td>
<td>Quercus falcata</td>
<td>1,600 L P G E G E</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Diamond Leaf</td>
<td>Quercus laurifolia</td>
<td>1,600 L P G G G</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy</td>
<td>Canopy Size Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Northern Red</td>
<td>Quercus rubra</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Nuttall</td>
<td>Quercus nuttallii</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Overcup</td>
<td>Quercus lyrata</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Post</td>
<td>Quercus stellata</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Scarlet</td>
<td>Quercus coccinea</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Shumard</td>
<td>Quercus shumardii</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Southern Red</td>
<td>Quercus falcata</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Swamp Chestnut</td>
<td>Quercus michauxii</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Water</td>
<td>Quercus nigra</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, White</td>
<td>Quercus alba</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Willow</td>
<td>Quercus phellos</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecan</td>
<td>Carya illinoensis</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persimmon, Common</td>
<td>Diospyros virginiana</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Loblolly</td>
<td>Pinus taeda</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Longleaf</td>
<td>Pinus palustris</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Mature Canopy Area</th>
<th>Recommended Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Square feet of Canopy</td>
<td>Canopy Size Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Shortleaf</td>
<td>Pinus echinata</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Slash</td>
<td>Pinus elliotii</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plum, Chickasaw</td>
<td>Prunus angustifolia</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poplar, Yellow</td>
<td>Liriodendron tulipifera</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, Eastern</td>
<td>Cercis canadensis</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, E. White</td>
<td>Cercis canadensis (alba)</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redcedar, Eastern</td>
<td>Juniperus virginiana</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sassafras</td>
<td>Sassafras albidum</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourwood</td>
<td>Oxydendrum arboreum</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>VS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweetgum</td>
<td>Liquidambar styraciflua</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sycamore</td>
<td>Platanus occidentalis</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willow, Black</td>
<td>Salix nigra</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>VS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 155 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-6. List of recommended uses for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

1 The total area projection of the crown onto the ground in square feet as typically achieved in urban situations with less than optimal growing conditions.
2 VS—Very Small - 150 square feet with a 15 foot crown diameter (minimum open soil surface area is 25 sq. ft.).
S—Small – 400 square feet with a 25 foot crown diameter (minimum open soil surface area is 100 sq. ft.).
M—Medium – 900 square feet with a 35 foot crown diameter (minimum open soil surface area is 225 sq. ft.).
L—Large – 1,600 square feet with a 45 foot crown diameter (minimum open soil surface area is 400 sq. ft.).

3 P = Plant new trees and conserve existing trees;
C = Conserve existing trees;
L = For limited planting or conservation only;
N = Do not plant;
X = tree to avoid, not suitable;
Blank = may or may not be suitable;
G = Good choice;
E = Excellent choice.
### Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Height Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Crown Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Mature Crown Form</th>
<th>Range of Mature Tree Height</th>
<th>Range of Mature Crown Width</th>
<th>Leaf Type</th>
<th>Fall Leaf Color</th>
<th>Flower Color</th>
<th>Flowering Time</th>
<th>Wildlife Value</th>
<th>Excessive Litter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ash, Green</td>
<td><em>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>40-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash, White</td>
<td><em>Fraxinus americana</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>50-80</td>
<td>30-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baldcypress</td>
<td><em>Taxodium distichum</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>20-50</td>
<td>DC</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beech, American</td>
<td><em>Fagus grandifolia</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>80-100</td>
<td>50-70</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River</td>
<td><em>Betula nigra</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>50-90</td>
<td>40-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River ‘Heritage’</td>
<td><em>Betula nigra</em> ‘Heritage’</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>50-90</td>
<td>40-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackgum (Tupelo)</td>
<td><em>Nyssa sylvatica</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>20-35</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boxelder</td>
<td><em>Acer negundo</em></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>30-40</td>
<td>30-40</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalpa, Southern</td>
<td><em>Catalpa bignonioides</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>50-90</td>
<td>15-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherry, Black</td>
<td><em>Prunus serotina</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>20-75</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cottonwood, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Populus deltoides</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>20-75</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Physical Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Height Class in Urban Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crapemyrtle, Comm.</td>
<td>Lagerstroemia</td>
<td>S VS MS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Flowering</td>
<td>Cornus florida</td>
<td>S S S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, American</td>
<td>Ulmus americana</td>
<td>L L U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Slippery</td>
<td>Ulmus rubra</td>
<td>L L U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Winged</td>
<td>Ulmus alata</td>
<td>L L U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Bitternutt</td>
<td>Carya cordiformis</td>
<td>L L O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Mockernut</td>
<td>Carya tomentosa</td>
<td>L L O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Pignut</td>
<td>Carya glabra</td>
<td>L L O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata</td>
<td>L L O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, S. Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata var. australis</td>
<td>L L O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Height Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Crown Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Mature Crown Form</th>
<th>Range of Mature Tree Height</th>
<th>Range of Mature Crown Width</th>
<th>Leaf Type</th>
<th>Fall Leaf Color</th>
<th>Flower Color</th>
<th>Flowering Time</th>
<th>Wildlife Value</th>
<th>Excessive Litter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holly, American</td>
<td>Ilex opaca</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>VS</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>20-70</td>
<td>15-25</td>
<td>EB</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, Deciduous</td>
<td>Ilex decidua</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>VS</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honeylocust</td>
<td>Gleditsia triacanthos</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Su</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hornbeam, Am.</td>
<td>Carpinus caroliniana</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>20-35</td>
<td>15-30</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Cucumber</td>
<td>Magnolia acuminata</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Southern</td>
<td>Magnolia grandiflora</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>80-100</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>EB</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Southern 'Little Gem'</td>
<td>Magnolia grandiflora 'Little Gem'</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>VS</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>40-60</td>
<td>20-30</td>
<td>EB</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Sweetbay</td>
<td>Magnolia virginiana</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>70-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Red</td>
<td>Acer rubrum</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40-90</td>
<td>20-35</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Wi</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Silver</td>
<td>Acer saccharinum</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>50-80</td>
<td>40-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Florida Sugar</td>
<td>Acer barbatum</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40-70</td>
<td>25-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Height Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Crown Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Mature Crown Form</th>
<th>Range of Mature Tree Height</th>
<th>Range of Mature Crown Width</th>
<th>Leaf Type</th>
<th>Fall Leaf Color</th>
<th>Flower Color</th>
<th>Flowering Time</th>
<th>Wildlife Value</th>
<th>Excessive Litter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar</td>
<td><em>Acer saccharum</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Su. 'Green Mtn'</td>
<td>*Acer sacch. 'Green Mtn'</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar 'Legacy'</td>
<td>*Acer saccharum 'Legacy'</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulberry, Red</td>
<td><em>Morus rubra</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40-70</td>
<td>20-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Black</td>
<td><em>Quercus velutina</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>50-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Cherrybark</td>
<td><em>Quercus falcata</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Diamond Leaf</td>
<td><em>Quercus laurifolia</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>50-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Northern Red</td>
<td><em>Quercus rubra</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Nuttall</td>
<td><em>Quercus nuttalli</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-80</td>
<td>35-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Overcup</td>
<td><em>Quercus lyrata</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>30-45</td>
<td>30-45</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Post</td>
<td><em>Quercus stellata</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40-50</td>
<td>35-40</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Height Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Crown Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Mature Crown Form</th>
<th>Range of Mature Tree Height</th>
<th>Range of Mature Crown Width</th>
<th>Leaf Type</th>
<th>Fall Leaf Color</th>
<th>Flower Color</th>
<th>Flowering Time</th>
<th>Wildlife Value</th>
<th>Excessive Litter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Scarlet</td>
<td><em>Quercus coccinea</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>50-80</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Shumard</td>
<td><em>Quercus shumardii</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-70</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Southern Red</td>
<td><em>Quercus falcata</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-70</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>O I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Swamp Chestnut</td>
<td><em>Quercus michauxii</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>30-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Water</td>
<td><em>Quercus nigra</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>30-70</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, White</td>
<td><em>Quercus alba</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-80</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Willow</td>
<td><em>Quercus phellos</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>40-100</td>
<td>30-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecan</td>
<td><em>Carya illinoensis</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>30-75</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Y I</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persimmon, Common</td>
<td><em>Diospyros virginiana</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>70-80</td>
<td>40-60</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>R I</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Loblolly</td>
<td><em>Pinus taeda</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>80-100</td>
<td>20-40</td>
<td>EC</td>
<td>E I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Longleaf</td>
<td><em>Pinus palustris</em></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>60-100</td>
<td>20-40</td>
<td>EC</td>
<td>E I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Physical Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Height Class in Urban Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Shortleaf</td>
<td><em>Pinus echinata</em></td>
<td>L L P 60-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Slash</td>
<td><em>Pinus elliotii</em></td>
<td>L L P 60-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plum, Chickasaw</td>
<td><em>Prunus angustifolia</em></td>
<td>L L I 60-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poplar, Yellow</td>
<td><em>Liriodendron tulipifera</em></td>
<td>L M O 40-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Cercis canadensis</em></td>
<td>L L O 80-150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, E. White</td>
<td><em>Cercis canadensis</em> (alba)</td>
<td>S S S 25-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redcedar, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Juniperus virginiana</em></td>
<td>S S R 20-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sassafras</td>
<td><em>Sassafras albidum</em></td>
<td>M M I 30-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourwood</td>
<td><em>Oxydendrum arboreum</em></td>
<td>S VS O 10-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweetgum</td>
<td><em>Liquidambar styraciflua</em></td>
<td>L L S 60-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sycamore</td>
<td><em>Platanus occidentalis</em></td>
<td>L L O 50-70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 162 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Height Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Crown Class in Urban Conditions</th>
<th>Mature Crown Form</th>
<th>Range of Mature Tree Height</th>
<th>Range of Mature Crown Width</th>
<th>Leaf Type</th>
<th>Fall Leaf Color</th>
<th>Flower Color</th>
<th>Flowering Time</th>
<th>Wildlife Value</th>
<th>Excessive Litter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Willow, Black</td>
<td>Salix nigra</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>VS</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>10-30</td>
<td>10-30</td>
<td>EB</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Height class (ground to tip of leader or tallest branch) of a mature tree commonly achieved in urban situations with less than optimal growing conditions. S = Small: 15-25 feet; M = Medium: 25-40 feet; L = Large: 40 feet and taller.

2 The width of the crown (at its widest point) commonly achieved in urban situations with less than optimal growing conditions. VS = Very Small (150 square feet with a 15 foot crown diameter); S = Small (400 square feet with a 25 foot crown diameter); M = Medium (900 square feet with a 35 foot crown diameter); L = Large (1,600 square feet with a 45 foot crown diameter).

3 General shape of the tree’s crown (leaves and branches). I = Irregular; MS = Multi-Stemmed; O = Oval (Columnar); P = Pyramidal; R = Rounded; S = Spreading; U = Upright (Vase).

4 Typical range of height of tree in feet from ground to bud at tip of leader or tallest branch under various conditions.

5 Typical range of spread of branches in feet at the widest diameter across the crown under various conditions.

6 Persistence and type of leaf on the tree. Deciduous trees lose their leaves in the fall. DB = Deciduous Broadleaf; DC = Deciduous Conifer; EB = Evergreen Broadleaf; EC = Evergreen Conifer.
Table D-7. List of physical characteristics for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

7E = Evergreen; B = Bronze or brown; M = Maroon; V = Various colors: maroon, red, orange, yellow; O = Orange; R = Red; Y = Yellow; I = Insignificant color change
8B = Blue; L = Purple; M = Multiple colors: white, pink, purple, red, or others; P = Pink; R = Red; Y = Yellow; I = Insignificant flowers.
9Sp = Spring; Su = Summer; Wi = Winter
10Indicates with an “X” if the tree produces flowers (nectar) or fruits that are consumed by insects, birds, or mammals.
11Indicates with an “X” if the tree produces large or hazardous leaves, fruit, or other litter.

Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ash, Green</td>
<td>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl/ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash, White</td>
<td>Fraxinus americana</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>sl/ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M/IS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baldcypress</td>
<td>Taxodium distichum</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.032</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beech, American</td>
<td>Fagus gradifolia</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>P/ A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River</td>
<td>Betula nigra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.117</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
### Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birch, River ‘Heritage’</td>
<td><em>Betula nigra</em> ‘Heritage’</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackgum (Tupelo)</td>
<td><em>Nyssa sylvatica</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>-0.053</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boxelder</td>
<td><em>Acer negundo</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.036</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>adapt</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalpa, Southern</td>
<td><em>Catalpa bignonioides</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.014</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherry, Black</td>
<td><em>Prunus serotina</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.083</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M/</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cottonwood, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Populus deltoides</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>-0.708</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crapemyrtle, Common</td>
<td><em>Lagerstroemia indica</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.004</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Flowering</td>
<td><em>Cornus florida</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.021</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>ac-nu</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>M/</td>
<td>IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogwood, Flow. Pink</td>
<td><em>Cornus florida</em> var. rubra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, American</td>
<td><em>Ulmus americana</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.143</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M/</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Slippery</td>
<td>Ulmus rubra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M/P</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elm, Winged</td>
<td>Ulmus alata</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Bitternunt</td>
<td>Carya cordiformis</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>P/</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Mockernut</td>
<td>Carya tomentos a</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>MP/</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Pignut</td>
<td>Carya glabra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>P/</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hickory, So. Shagbark</td>
<td>Carya ovata var. australis</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td></td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, American</td>
<td>Ilex opaca</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holly, Deciduous</td>
<td>Ilex decidua</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-alk</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Honeylocust</td>
<td><em>Gleditsia triacanthos</em></td>
<td>X F S</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>FS M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hophornbeam, Am.</td>
<td><em>Ostrya virginiana</em></td>
<td>X S M</td>
<td>0.032</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H ac-alk</td>
<td>SH</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>SH M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>0.032</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hornbeam, A.</td>
<td><em>Carpinus caroliniana</em></td>
<td>X S M</td>
<td>0.009</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M sl ac-sl</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>M/SC</td>
<td>M/SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Cucumber</td>
<td><em>Magnolia acuminata</em></td>
<td>X F M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L acidic</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M/SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Southern</td>
<td><em>Magnolia grandiflora</em></td>
<td>X M L</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M/SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, So. ‘Little Gem’</td>
<td><em>Magnolia grandiflora ‘Little Gem’</em></td>
<td>X S M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnolia, Sweetbay</td>
<td><em>Magnolia virginiana</em></td>
<td>X F M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>L acidic</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Red</td>
<td><em>Acer rubrum</em></td>
<td>X F L</td>
<td>0.084</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Silver</td>
<td><em>Acer saccharinum</em></td>
<td>X F S</td>
<td>0.084</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>P/ A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Florida Sugar</td>
<td>Acer barbatum</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>M/IS</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar</td>
<td>Acer saccharum</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Su. ‘Green Mtn.’</td>
<td>Acer sach. ‘Green Mtn.’</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple, Sugar ‘Legacy’</td>
<td>Acer saccharum ‘Legacy’</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulberry, Red</td>
<td>Morus rubra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.099</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>G/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Black</td>
<td>Quercus velutina</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.253</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>G/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Cherrybark</td>
<td>Quercus falcata</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>G/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Diamond Leaf</td>
<td>Quercus laurifolia</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td>G/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Northern Red</td>
<td>Quercus rubra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.503</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/M IS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Nuttall</td>
<td>Quercus nuttalli</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

see page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Overcup</td>
<td>Quercus lyrata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.159</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Post</td>
<td>Quercus stellata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.327</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Scarlet</td>
<td>Quercus coccinea</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.592</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Shumard</td>
<td>Quercus shumardii</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.265</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Southern Red</td>
<td>Quercus falcata</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.576</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Swamp Chestnut</td>
<td>Quercus michauxii</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.544</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Water</td>
<td>Quercus nigra</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.451</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, White</td>
<td>Quercus alba</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.348</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oak, Willow</td>
<td>Quercus phellos</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.314</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecan</td>
<td>Carya illinoensis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.088</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>sl ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
### Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persimmon, Common</td>
<td><em>Diospyros virginiana</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/ P</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Loblolly</td>
<td><em>Pinus taeda</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>acidic</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Longleaf</td>
<td><em>Pinus palustris</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>GM/ C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Shortleaf</td>
<td><em>Pinus echinata</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>GM/ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pine, Slash</td>
<td><em>Pinus elliotii</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plum, Chickasaw</td>
<td><em>Prunus angustifolia</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>-0.415</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl ac-sl alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>pg</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poplar, Yellow</td>
<td><em>Liriodendron tulipifera</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>-0.417</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Cercis canadensis</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.171</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>P/ IS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redbud, E. White</td>
<td><em>Cercis canadensis</em> (alba)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.012</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl ac</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>M/ S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redcedar, Eastern</td>
<td><em>Juniperus virginiana</em></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>ac-sl ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>Native Tree to Mississippi</th>
<th>Growth Rate</th>
<th>Average Life Span</th>
<th>Net Effect on Air Quality</th>
<th>Soil Moisture</th>
<th>Drought Tolerance</th>
<th>Preferred Soil pH</th>
<th>Light Requirement</th>
<th>Construction Tolerances/Limitations</th>
<th>Urban Tolerant Tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sassafras</td>
<td>Sassafras albidum</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.022</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sourwood</td>
<td>Oxydendrum arboreum</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>sl-ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweetgum</td>
<td>Liquidambar styraciflua</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.118</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sycamore</td>
<td>Platanus occidentalis</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>ac-sl</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willow, Black</td>
<td>Salix nigra</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>ac-alk</td>
<td>FS</td>
<td>G/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

see page 171 for footnotes describing letters used in this table.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

1Typical rate of growth under urban conditions.  S = Slow: 1/2 to 1-1/2 feet/year; M = Moderate: 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 feet/year; F = Fast: 2-1/2 to 3+ feet/year.

2The average life span (useful service life) of the species when growing under average urban conditions.  A tree is at the end of its useful service life when its risk of failure becomes unacceptable and cannot be improved or when the tree is no longer an asset due to its appearance or condition.  S = Short: less than 25 years useful service life; M = Moderate: 25 to 40 years useful service life; L = Long: 50 years or greater useful service life.

3The net monetary effects in cents attributable to the species on air quality; listed as a benefit (positive) or cost (negative).  Includes the species net effect on ozone, sulfur dioxide, nitrogen dioxide, particulate matter (PM$_{10}$), and carbon monoxide.

4The typical soil moisture conditions for the species in its native habitat.  H = Hydric: wet and may be occasionally flooded for short periods; M = Mesic: moist but moderately well- to well-drained; X = Xeric: dry and very well-drained.

5Tolerance of the species to infrequent rain, low soil moisture, full sun, and high temperatures.  Low = not tolerant to drought; Moderate = tolerant to mild drought; moderately tolerant to severe drought; High = very tolerant to mild, severe, and prolonged drought.

6Relative soil acidity or alkalinity preferred by the species. In many cases, a range of pH preference is given if it was available.  In other cases, a general level is given.  A pH of 7.0 is neutral, a pH of less than 7.0 is acidic, and a pH of greater than 7.0 is alkaline.  Ac = acidic (5.0 to 6.0); sl ac = slightly acidic (6.0 to 7.0); nu = neutral (7.0); sl al = slightly alkaline (7.0 to 8.0); al = alkaline (8.0 to 8.5); n/a = no information available.

7The amount of sunlight the species prefers or will tolerate. Trees that are typically found in the understory or are characteristic of late forest successional stages prefer shade or at least partial shade, while trees that typically form the overstory or are characteristic of early successional stages prefer full sun.  FS = Full Sun; PS = Partial Shade; SH = Shade.

8The broad tolerance of the species in its home range to construction damage, and the limitations that constrain a species tolerance to damage.  Tolerances: P = Poor; M = Moderate; G = Good; Limitations: I = physical injury, wood compartmentalization and decay; P = pest complications, including chronic and acute attacks; S = soil conditions, including aeration and water availability; C = limited climatic tolerances, including native range, hardiness, and micro-climate change; A = all of the limitations described above.
Table D-8. List of environmental characteristics and tolerances for tree species suitable for urban and community forestry environments in the Southeast (continued).

Based upon other characteristics and tolerances to urban conditions; an “X” indicates the species is suitable for planting under “tough” urban conditions.
### Appendix E – Reduction of Impervious Cover in Urban and Community Areas

#### Table E-1. Strategies to minimize impervious area at the site development level.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Reduce residential road widths.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shorter road lengths.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cul-de-sac donuts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Disconnect roof leaders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Cluster development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Angled parking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Smaller parking stalls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Reduced parking ratios for some land uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Shared parking and driveways.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Shorter residential driveways.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Reduced cul-de-sac radii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Taller buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Vertical parking structures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Require open space/green space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Require buffers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Swales rather than curb/gutters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Encourage runon to pervious surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Commercial open space landscaping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Sidewalks on one (lowest) side of street.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Reduce setbacks and frontage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Flexible minimum lot sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>“Hourglass” streets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>T or V shaped turnarounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Permeable spillover parking areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Appendix F – Additional Urban and Community Forestry Resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Software</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **ArborAccess** | West Coast Arborists  
2200 East Via Burton Street  
Anaheim, CA 92806  
(800) 521-3714  
E-mail: infor@wcainc.com | ArborAccess, is a tree inventory program that simplifies the management of the urban forest and can be linked to a GIS program such as ArcView for geocoding purposes. |
| **Canopy** | Brian Darr  
Southern Urban Forestry Assoc.  
4049 Dalewood Street  
Northport, AL 35474-4554  
(205) 333-2477  
(888) 433-TREE  
E-mail: brian@sufa.com  
www.sufa.com | A street and park tree inventory system. |
| **CITYgreen** | Mike Lehner  
C/O American Forests  
P O Box 2000  
Washington, DC 20013  
(800) 368-5748 Ext. 212  
E-mail: mLehner@amfor.org  
www.americanforests.org | CITYgreen is a powerful GIS application for land-use planning and policy-making. The software conducts complex statistical analyses of ecosystem services and creates easy-to-understand maps and reports. CITYGreen calculates dollar benefits based on your specific site conditions. |
## Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community and Urban Forest Inventory and Management Program (CUFIM)</td>
<td>Norman H. Pilsbury&lt;br&gt;Samantha J. Gill&lt;br&gt;Urban Forest Ecosystems Institute&lt;br&gt;Cal Poly State University&lt;br&gt;San Luis Obispo, CA 93407&lt;br&gt;www.ufei.org/ufeipublications.lasso</td>
<td>CUFIM is an Excel-based computer program that can be used to setup and maintain a tree inventory and database, and to evaluate the urban forest in quantitative terms including volume and value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Tree Manager for Windows (CTMW)</td>
<td>Annissa Grider&lt;br&gt;ACRT&lt;br&gt;P O Box 401&lt;br&gt;Cuyahoga Falls, OH 44221&lt;br&gt;(800) 622-2562&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:agrider@acrtinc.com">agrider@acrtinc.com</a>&lt;br&gt;www.acrtinc.com</td>
<td>For small- to medium-size communities, CTMW organizes tree data into a user-friendly, easily accessible database, and is a powerful tool for generating reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Resource Management for Windows</td>
<td>Annissa Grider&lt;br&gt;ACRT&lt;br&gt;P O Box 401&lt;br&gt;Cuyahoga Falls, OH 44221&lt;br&gt;(800) 622-2562&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:agrider@acrtinc.com">agrider@acrtinc.com</a>&lt;br&gt;www.acrtinc.com</td>
<td>Designed for anyone who manages more than just trees. Has integrated mapping and data fields tailor made for your needs. Green Resource Manager is perfect for arboretums, parks, golf courses, estates, and property managers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvenTree Management</td>
<td>Kunde Co., Inc.&lt;br&gt;2489 Rice St., #160&lt;br&gt;Roseville, MN 55113&lt;br&gt;(612) 484-0114&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:kundeco@isd.net">kundeco@isd.net</a>&lt;br&gt;www.kundeco.com</td>
<td>InvenTree© is a tree and urban forestry management program designed by foresters, for tree care managers. Straight forward and comprehensive, this is the program for all your tree inventory needs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InvenTree</td>
<td>Solutions by Lehner&lt;br&gt;202 Lincoln Way East&lt;br&gt;Mishawaka, IN 46544-2042&lt;br&gt;(219) 256-9267&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:charles141@aol.com">charles141@aol.com</a></td>
<td>Set of template files containing preformatted fields, layouts, and scripts designed for inventories and management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCTI - Mobile Community Tree Inventory</td>
<td>USDA Forest Service Northeast Center for Urban and Community Forestry&lt;br&gt;Parks Department&lt;br&gt;Springfield, MA 01109&lt;br&gt;www.umass.edu/urbantree/mcti&lt;br&gt;David Bloniarz, USDA-FS&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:dbloniarz@fs.fed.us">dbloniarz@fs.fed.us</a></td>
<td>The MCTI software has been developed as a desktop and PDA software package that provides a versatile tree inventory collection system for municipal tree managers. This public-domain program package, manual, and associated materials are available for free download and can be used by communities of varying sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-line Tree Inventory System</td>
<td>Brian Darr&lt;br&gt;Southern Urban Forestry Assoc.&lt;br&gt;4049 Dalewood Street&lt;br&gt;Northport, AL 35474-4554&lt;br&gt;(205) 333-2477&lt;br&gt;(888) 433-TREE&lt;br&gt;E-mail: <a href="mailto:brian@sufa.com">brian@sufa.com</a>&lt;br&gt;www.sufa.com</td>
<td>This system will allow multiple users from many locations to view, edit and search tree inventory data. This system also allows for pictures of inventoried trees.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


## Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Pocket Arborist          | Gray Hill Solutions  
4500 Ninth Avenue NE Suite 300  
Seattle, WA 98105  
(206) 633-6083  
www.grayhillsolutions.com | Pocket Arborist™ gives you three powerful tools for your handheld device: a valuation calculator, a hazard tree assessment system, and a small tree inventory database—all in the palm of your hand. |
| SelecTree: A Tree        | Urban Forest Ecosystems Institute  
Cal-Poly State University  
San Luis Obispo, CA 93407  
selectree.cagr.calpoly.edu | SelecTree is an interactive program designed to match specific tree species to particular sites based on compatible characteristics. |
| SilviBASE                | Natural Resource Planning Services—David Fox  
5700 SW 34th Street., Suite 324  
Gainesville, FL 32608  
(352) 378-8966  
E-mail: dave@nrpsforesters.com | Tree inventory software.                                                                                                                                 |
| SiteManager              | Athenic Systems  
137 West Vine St.  
Lexington, KY 40507  
(859) 254-5788  
www.athenic.com | SiteManager reduces management costs for landscape contractors and managers of golf courses, botanical gardens, museums, zoos, visitor centers and similar facilities by transforming how physical assets are managed. |
## Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TreeKeeper for Windows, TreeKeeper-Online</strong></td>
<td>Davey Resource Group 1500 North Mantua Street P O Box 5193 Kent, OH 44240 (800) 447-1667 E-mail: <a href="mailto:info@davey.com">info@davey.com</a> <a href="http://www.davey.com">www.davey.com</a></td>
<td>TKO is an Internet based tree inventory program. Features include TreeSites Manager, Work Records Manager, and TreeKeeper Site Finder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TreeKeeper, Jr.</strong></td>
<td>The National Arbor Day Foundation 100 Arbor Avenue Nebraska City, NE 68410 (402) 474-5655 <a href="http://www.arborday.org/">www.arborday.org/</a></td>
<td>MS-DOS based tree inventory system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tree Manager for Windows (TMW)</strong></td>
<td>ACRT P O Box 401 Cuyahoga Falls, OH 44221 (800) 622-2562 E-mail: <a href="mailto:askacrt@acrtinc.com">askacrt@acrtinc.com</a> <a href="http://www.acrtinc.com">www.acrtinc.com</a></td>
<td>TMW maintains an up-to-date file of all trees in your inventory and generates numerous user-defined summary reports, listings, and work orders. Users can easily update information by adding newly planted trees and denoting trees that have been removed. TMW can also automatically calculate total and individual tree values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TreeMaster</strong></td>
<td>Urban Forestry Consultants 4980 Aspian Way, Suite 205 El Sobrante, CA 94803 (510) 222-6278 E-mail: <a href="mailto:tpehrson@pacbell.net">tpehrson@pacbell.net</a></td>
<td>Street-tree inventory software</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Software

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| TreePro | Gray Hill Solutions  
4500 Ninth Avenue NE, Suite 300  
Seattle, WA 98105  
(206) 633-6083  
www.grayhillsolutions.com | TreePro™ is an easy-to-learn, easy-to-use GIS-based application for managing trees and tree-related work orders. |
| TreeScape | Natural Resources Technologies, LLC  
P O Box 780603  
Tallassee, AL 36078  
(888) 848-2146  
E-mail: info@nrtech.com  
www.nrtech.com | TreeScape is a Geographic Information System that allows the user to create and print job site maps to scale, maintain information on individual property features (e.g., boundary, beds, turf, trees and hardscape) and perform queries. |
| TreeTown | Tom Gaman  
East-West Forestry Associates, Inc.  
P O Box 276  
Inverness, CA 94937  
(415) 669-7100  
E-mail: tgaman@forestdata.com  
www.forestdata.com | TreeTown2000 is a powerful, yet easy to use, tool for collecting, managing, and analyzing urban forest data and mapping urban forests anywhere! |
| TriM | Brian Darr  
Southern Urban Forestry Associates  
4049 Dalewood Street  
Northport, AL 35474-4554  
(205) 333-2477  
(888) 433-TREE  
E-mail: brian@sufa.com  
www.sufa.com | A tree risk management program to evaluate, record, and manage urban trees. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Vendor and Address</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trims Tree Inventory</td>
<td>TRIMS Software International, Inc.</td>
<td>TRIMS Tree Inventory provides a complete tree inventory, tree care and work tracking system for large areas, golf courses, parks, and business campuses. Maintains accurate records of trees, work schedules, work requests, and completed work activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UFIS (Urban Forest Inventory System)</td>
<td>Natural Resources Technologies, LLC</td>
<td>UFIS is a user-friendly Geographic Information System designed for urban professionals. It allows you to locate trees on a map, edit information about that tree, print work orders, and perform searches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urbtree: Urban Tree Valuation</td>
<td>IFAS Publications</td>
<td>Helps tree owners, horticulturalists, urban forests, and arborists estimate tree value in yards, along streets, or in wooded lots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTMS III, UTMS 5000, Snappy (Urban Tree Management System)</td>
<td>Urban Tree Management System</td>
<td>Street-tree inventory and management software.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Web Links

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American Forests</td>
<td><a href="http://www.americanforests.org">www.americanforests.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Center for Urban Forestry Research</td>
<td>wcufre.ucdavis.edu/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Inventory and Analysis for Mississippi</td>
<td>srsfia2.fs.fed.us/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Society of Arboriculture</td>
<td><a href="http://www.isa-arbor.com">www.isa-arbor.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ)</td>
<td><a href="http://www.deq.state.ms.us">www.deq.state.ms.us</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Forestry Commission</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mfc.state.ms.us/urban/uf1.html">www.mfc.state.ms.us/urban/uf1.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Main Street Association</td>
<td><a href="http://www.msmainstreet.com">www.msmainstreet.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Urban Forest Council</td>
<td><a href="http://www.mfc.state.ms.us">www.mfc.state.ms.us</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.msurbanforest.com">www.msurbanforest.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Arbor Day Foundation</td>
<td><a href="http://www.arborday.org/">www.arborday.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Tree Trust</td>
<td><a href="http://www.nationaltreetrust.org">www.nationaltreetrust.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Urban and Community Forestry Advisory Council</td>
<td><a href="http://www.treelink.org">www.treelink.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Adverse Impact</td>
<td><a href="http://www.floods.org/home/default.asp">www.floods.org/home/default.asp</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seattle, WA's Natural Drainage Systems Program</td>
<td><a href="http://www.seattle.gov/util/Services/Drainage&amp;_Sewer/index.asp">www.seattle.gov/util/Services/Drainage&amp;_Sewer/index.asp</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Region Urban Forestry Technical Service Center</td>
<td><a href="http://www.urbanforestrysouth.org">www.urbanforestrysouth.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Urban Forestry Associates</td>
<td><a href="http://www.sufa.com">www.sufa.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States Forest Service</td>
<td><a href="http://www.srs.fs.usda.gov">www.srs.fs.usda.gov</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
State Contacts

Stephen C. Grado  
Department of Forestry 
Mississippi State University 
Box 9681 
Mississippi State, MS 39762-9681 
Phone (662) 325-2792 
Fax (662) 325-8726 
E-mail: sgrado@cfr.msstate.edu 
www.cfr.msstate.edu

Everard Baker  
Assistant State Forester 
Mississippi Forestry Commission 
301 N. Lamar St., Suite 300 
Jackson, MS 39201 
Phone (601) 957-1552 
Fax (601) 359-1349 
E-mail: ebaker@mfc.state.ms.us

Rick Olson  
State Urban Forestry Coordinator 
Mississippi Forestry Commission 
301 N. Lamar St., Suite 300 
Jackson, MS 39201 
Phone (601) 359-1386 
Fax (601) 359-1349 
E-mail: rolson@mfc.state.ms.us

Walter Passmore  
State Urban Forestry Partnership Coordinator 
Mississippi Forestry Commission 
301 N. Lamar St., Suite 300 
Jackson, MS 39201 
Phone (601) 359-1386 
Fax (601) 359-1349 
E-mail: wpassmore@mfc.state.ms.us

Donna Yowell  
Executive Director of the Mississippi Urban 
Forest Council 
National Urban and Community Forestry 
Advisory Council (NUCFAC) 
164 Trace Cove Drive 
Madison, MS 39110 
Phone (601) 856-1660 
Cell Phone (601) 672-0755 
E-mail: dyowell@aol.com

David Thompson  
MS Department of Transportation 
P O Box 1850 
Jackson, MS 39215-1850 
Phone (601) 359-7111 
E-mail: dgthompson@mdot.state.ms.us
State Contacts

Stephen Dicke
Extension Forestry Specialist
Cooperative Extension Service
1320 Seven Springs Road
Raymond, MS 39154
Phone (601) 857-2284
Fax (601) 857-2358
E-mail: steved@ext.msstate.edu

J. Allen Holditch
Forester
Natural Resources Conservation Service
Dr. A.H. McCoy Federal Building
100 West Capital Street, Suite 1321
Jackson, MS 39269
Phone (601) 965-4339 ext. 238
Fax (601) 965-4430

Barbara Ryan
Executive Director
Trees for Jackson
931 Highway 80 West Unit 67
Jackson, MS 39204
Phone (601) 352-1808
Fax (601) 352-1808
E-mail: keepjack@bellsouth.net

James MacLellan
Community Growth Readiness – NEMO
Mississippi DEQ
Nonpoint Source Section
P.O. Box 10385
Jackson, MS 39289-0385
Phone (601) 961-5171
Fax (601) 961-5376
E-mail: James_MacLellan@deq.state.ms.us

John Wesley Jones
Land Use and Tree Consultant
510 E. Gillespie Street, F-36
Starkville, MS 39759
Phone (228) 669-0014
E-mail: jwj42@msstate.edu
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proper Tree Care</td>
<td>Department of Media Services</td>
<td>Five different topics including pruning. Available for loan or sale in any specified videotape format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Forestry at its Best</td>
<td>Alabama Forestry Commission</td>
<td>Profile of nine Baldwin County community tree programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper Tree Pruning</td>
<td>Alabama Forestry Commission</td>
<td>Demonstrates the need for proper pruning and shows several techniques with associated tools. A 20-minute video in VHS format. Valuable to all property owners and new tree department employees. Copies provided free when you send a videocassette and self-addressed mailing label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban Forestry: Making Trees Work for Your Community</td>
<td>Alabama Urban Forestry Association</td>
<td>Provides compelling reasons for communities to develop technical-based tree programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Trees During Construction</td>
<td>Jim Northum</td>
<td>Caring for trees in a construction site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Add Tree Power to Your Home this Arbor Day | City Electric System  
1001 James Street  
Key West, FL 33040                                           | A guide to tree planting for energy conservation. Published 1994, 12 minutes. |
| Green it on Green Street                  | Mayor’s Beautification Program, Inc.  
P O Box 2104  
Tampa, FL 33601                                               | A volunteer group plants trees in a downtown setting. Published 1993, 15 minutes. |
| Tree City USA – Greening Florida          | Florida Division of Forestry  
Forest Management Bureau  
3125 Conner Boulevard  
Tallahassee, FL 32399-1650  
www.fl-dof.com                        | Discusses the benefits of urban trees and promotes the “Tree City USA” program. Published 1995, 9 minutes. |
| Tree Pruning                              | Florida Division of Forestry  
Forest Management Bureau  
3125 Conner Boulevard  
Tallahassee, FL 32399-1650  
www.fl-dof.com                        | How to hire an arborist and how to prune trees. Published 1995, 8 minutes. |
| Building Among Trees                      | Georgia Forestry Commission  
P O Box 819  
Macon, GA 31202  
www.gfc.state.ga.us                      | How to protect and care for trees on development sites. Published 1985, 8 minutes. |
| Georgia Schoolyard and Wildlife Habitats  | Georgia Forestry Commission  
P O Box 819  
Macon, GA 31202  
www.gfc.state.ga.us                      | A promotional introduction to the Schoolyard Wildlife Habitat Program. Published 1994, 14 minutes. |
## Educational Materials - Videos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Trees and Cities Living Together | Georgia Forestry Commission P O Box 819  
Macon, GA 31202  
www.gfc.state.ga.us | Citizens of a small Georgia community work together to enhance the community through a tree management program. Published 1980, 8 minutes. |
| Watering and Fertilizing Your Trees | Georgia Forestry Commission P O Box 819  
Macon, GA 31202  
www.gfc.state.ga.us | Do’s and don’ts for tree care. Published 1986, 7 minutes. |
| When you Plant a Tree | Georgia Forestry Commission P O Box 819  
Macon, GA 31202  
www.gfc.state.ga.us | Do’s and don’t’s for tree planting. Published 1986, 7 minutes. |
| Why an Urban Forest? | Albany-Dougherty Clean Community Commission P O Box 4868  
Albany, GA 31706 | The first of this two-part video addresses the need to protect the urban forest. The second part focuses on how to get involved with urban forestry. Published 1991, 5 minutes. |
| Xeriscape-Making Your Landscape Water Wise | Georgia Water Wise Council  
1033 Franklin Road, Suite 11-187  
Marietta, GA 30067 | Principles of xeriscape and their applicability in Georgia. Published 1993, 12 minutes. |
| Forever Green | Kentucky Division of Forestry  
627 Comanche Trail  
Frankford, KY 40601  
www.forestry.ky.gov | Discusses community forestry program in Anchorage, Kentucky. Published 1991, 12 minutes. |
### Educational Materials - Videos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Managing Urban Soils</td>
<td>Department of Horticulture and Landscape Architecture, Agricultural Sciences Building North, University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY 40546-0091, <a href="http://www.uky.edu">www.uky.edu</a></td>
<td>This is a companion video to the publication, “Managing Trees in the Urban Environment, Part 1.” Published in 1993, 14 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting Street Trees</td>
<td>Kentucky Division of Forestry, 627 Comanche Trail, Frankford, KY 40601, <a href="http://www.forestry.ky.gov">www.forestry.ky.gov</a></td>
<td>Describes Lexington, Kentucky’s street tree program with information on how a landowner can obtain a street tree and how neighborhood associations can obtain tree-planting grants. Published 1991, 6 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powerful Problems...Growing Solutions</td>
<td>Kentucky Division of Forestry, 627 Comanche Trail, Frankford, KY 40601, <a href="http://www.forestry.ky.gov">www.forestry.ky.gov</a></td>
<td>Explains the conflicts and compromises between trees and power lines. Published 1990; produced by Louisville Gas and Electric, 12 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Planting Program</td>
<td>Division of Planning, Lexington - Fayette Urban County Government, Lexington, KY 40507</td>
<td>Describes Lexington’s tree planting program. Published 1990, 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Tree Story...A True Story</td>
<td>Louisiana Department of Agriculture and Forestry, P O Box 1628, Baton Rouge, LA 70821-1628, <a href="http://www.ldaf.state.la.us">www.ldaf.state.la.us</a></td>
<td>Outlines benefits of urban trees. Published 1995, 8 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Educational Materials - Videos

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Urban Forest—A Community Asset</td>
<td>Mississippi Urban Forest Council &lt;br&gt; 164 Trace Cove Drive &lt;br&gt; Madison, MS 39110 &lt;br&gt; <a href="http://www.mfc.state.ms.us/urban">www.mfc.state.ms.us/urban</a></td>
<td>Overview of urban forestry. 20 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Plant a Tree</td>
<td>Oklahoma Tree Bank Foundation &lt;br&gt; 5005 N. Pennsylvania St. &lt;br&gt; Oklahoma City, OK 73112-8873</td>
<td>Guide to planting trees in urban soils. Published 1995, 22 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oklahoma Gardening and Urban Forestry</td>
<td>Steve Dobbs &lt;br&gt; Extension Consumer Horticulture Specialist &lt;br&gt; 350 Agriculture Hall &lt;br&gt; Oklahoma State University &lt;br&gt; Stillwater, OK 74078-0511 &lt;br&gt; www1.dasnr.okstate.edu</td>
<td>A series of 5-10 minute video segments that were developed and shown on a weekend gardening television show. Published 1993, 115 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees for Our Highways</td>
<td>Oklahoma Department of Transportation Beautification Office &lt;br&gt; 200 NE 21st Street &lt;br&gt; Oklahoma City, OK 73105 &lt;br&gt; <a href="http://www.okladot.state.ok.us/">www.okladot.state.ok.us/</a></td>
<td>Discusses trees suitable for planting along state highway systems. Published in 1992, 16 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting the Urban Forest</td>
<td>City of Grapevine &lt;br&gt; P O Box 95104 &lt;br&gt; Grapevine, TX 76099 &lt;br&gt; <a href="http://www.ci.grapevine.tx.us">www.ci.grapevine.tx.us</a></td>
<td>Video explains tree selection and planting in detail. Published 1993, 22 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Quality and Conservation</td>
<td>Texas Cooperative Extension 7101 TAMU</td>
<td>Three video set including companion brochure; covers three topics related to urban landscaping. Published 1993.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>College Station, TX 77843-7101 agextension.tamu.edu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Among Trees</td>
<td>Virginia Department of Forestry P O Box 3758</td>
<td>Basics of tree protection on development sites. Published 1987, 12 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charlottesville, VA 22903 <a href="http://www.dof.state.va.us">www.dof.state.va.us</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Landscape Below Ground I and II</td>
<td>International Society of Arboriculture P O Box 3129 Champaign, IL 61826-3129 <a href="http://www.isa-arbor.com">www.isa-arbor.com</a></td>
<td>Two videos on the same topic. Published 1993.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Urban Forest—People and Trees Living Together</td>
<td>Iris Magaly Zayas USDA Forest Service 1720 Peachtree Rd. N.W. Atlanta, GA 30367</td>
<td>Video that compliments activities of the book of the same name. Published 1994, by USDA Forest Service, Southern Region; 15 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Educational Materials - Slides</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td><strong>Source</strong></td>
<td><strong>Notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLC for City Trees</td>
<td>Audio Visual Communications 435 Crooked Lane King of Prussia, PA 19046</td>
<td>An 80-slide set with tape and printed script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban Tree Identification</td>
<td>North Carolina Division of Forest Resources P O Box 29581 Raleigh, NC 27626-0581 <a href="http://www.dfr.state.nc.us">www.dfr.state.nc.us</a></td>
<td>Identification features of trees found within the urban environment of North Carolina. 1100 slides. Published 1995; slides can be reproduced for education publications with permission from the photographer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You Live in an Urban Forest</td>
<td>Keep Oklahoma Beautiful 2901 N. Classen Blvd. Oklahoma City, OK 73106 <a href="http://www.keepoklahomabeautiful.com">www.keepoklahomabeautiful.com</a></td>
<td>Written narrative to slide show that includes alternatives to hauling urban wood waste to landfills. Contains examples of communities in Oklahoma that have taken action. Published 1995.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood Waste Slide Show</td>
<td>Keep Oklahoma Beautiful 2901 N. Classen Blvd. Oklahoma City, OK 73106 <a href="http://www.keepoklahomabeautiful.com">www.keepoklahomabeautiful.com</a></td>
<td>Written narrative to slide show that includes alternatives to hauling urban wood waste to landfills. Contains examples of communities in Oklahoma that have taken action. Published 1995.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mississippi State University complies with all applicable laws regarding affirmative action and equal opportunity in all its activities and programs and does not discriminate against anyone protected by law because of age, color, disability, national origin, race, religion, sex, handicap, or status as a veteran or disabled veteran.